

# Evolution of this document

Date	Author	Rev	Description	
19/11/2024	FC	18	Description of the recipe tool bar and add the amber recipe converter.	
07/10/2024	FC	17	Explanation of security filtering modes.	
08/08/2024	FC	16	Clock time and scheduler section updated.	
01/08/2024	FC	15	New batch features, update options, add direct connect.	
12/09/2023	FC	14	ASCII server: new event OnReceiveStr.	
21/10/2022	FC	13	Script: new instructions: With, Record and Caseof	
05/09/2022	FC	12	Automatic report generation.	

# Table of contents

1.	ABOU	Г THIS MANUAL	8
2.	INSTA	LLATION	
	21 b		0
	2.1. IN 2.2 L1	STALLING CRYSTAL AE	8 0
	2.2. Li 2.3 G	CENSE KE I	9 9
	231	Multiple instances	9
	2.3.2.	Clock. timestamp and real time engine	
2	DACE		11
э.	BACK	UP	
4.	FILE D	DESCRIPTIONS	15
	4.1. FI	LES IN PROGRAM FOLDER	
	4.2. FI	LES IN PROJECT DIRECTORY	20
5.	INTER	FACE OVERVIEW	
	5.1 Ic		27
	511	UNS OVERVIEW	
	512	Simulator icon	28
	5.1.3.	Alarm icon	
	5.2. Ev	VENT HISTORY	
	5.2.1.	Log viewer	
6	MENII	BAR FFATURFS	30
0.			
	6.1. FI	LE MENU	
	0.1.1. 6.1.2	File/Open	
	0.1.2. 6.1.2	File / Open receni:	
	0.1.J. 614	rue/suve Rackun:	
	615	Close all forms	32
	6.1.6.	Browse project and program directories	
	6.1.7.	Exit	
	6.2. Vi	IEW MENU	
	6.2.1.	Console	
	6.2.2.	Memory	
	6.2.3.	Splash window	
	6.2.4.	Diagnostic	
	0.2.3. 6.2.6	GSM inspector	
	627	Script explorer	
	628	Data explorer	39
	6.3. RI	ECIPE MENU	
	6.4. To	DOLS MENU	40
	6.4.1.	Test tools	
	6.4.2.	UDP Client/Server test	
	6.4.3.	AIM IP setup	
	6.4.4.	Log Viewer	
	6.4.5.	CSV viewer	
	0.4.0. 6 4 7	Black box viewer	
	0.4.7. 618	Seurch	
	6.5. FI	DITORS MENU	
	6.6. SF	TUP MENU	
	6.7. W	INDOW MENU	
	6.8. H	ELP MENU	
	6.8.1.	Operator manual	
	6.8.2.	Script manual	
	6.8.3.	Contact	
	<i>6.8.4</i> .	Crystal XE versions	

	6.8.5	. Check for update	51
7.	MAI	N TAB	
-	7 1	AUTOMATION	52
7	·1. 7	USER VIEW	
,	7.2.1	Example of equipment representation	
	7.2.2	Interacting with the equipment	
7	7.3.	SYSTEM SECURITY	56
8.	СНА	MBER TABS	
	1		50
s S	5.1. ≥ 2	USER VIEW	
C	821	Equinment list view	
	8.2.2	Equipment is very	
	8.2.3	. Example of Detail view window (temperature)	
	8.2.4	. Sub equipment inspector	
8	3.3.	CHAMBER SECURITY	67
	8.3.1	. Securities equipment view	
	8.3.2	I ree view	
	0.5.5. 834	. Alurm levels Configuring the security agents	
8	8.4.	RECIPES	
	8.4.1	Creating a new recipe	
	8.4.2	. Editing an existing recipe	
	8.4.3	. Executing a recipe	
8	3.5.	CHARTS	
	8.5.1	. General	
	0.J.2. 853	Curves and adia acquisition	
8	8.6.	RECORDER	
	8.6.1	. Recording data	
	8.6.2	. Recorder templates	
8	3.7.	DEVICES	108
8	8.8.	STATISTICS	110
9.	HAR	DWARE CONFIGURATION	112
9	9.1.	RESTORING DEFAULT SETUP VALUES	
Ģ	0.2.	MAIN ITEM	
	9.2.1	. Project information	113
	9.2.2	. Global variables	114
~	9.2.3	. Simulation mode	
y	1.3. 021	ARCHITECTURE ITEM	
	9.5.1	Automation	110
	9.3.3	Chamber palette	
9	9.4.	CONFIGURING CHAMBERS	121
	9.4.1	. Parameters	121
	9.4.2	. Recipes	
<i>_</i>	9.4.3	. Platens used for platen automation	
ç	1.3. 051	CONFIGURING DEVICES	124
	9.5.2	Devices views	127
	9.5.3	Configuring communication ports	
	9.5.4	. Preconfigured devices	
	9.5.5	. Device models (Protocols)	132
	9.5.6	Connecting devices to communication ports	
~	9.5.7.	Device settings	
ç	1.0. 0.6 1	CONFIGURING EQUIPMENT	133 121
	9.0.1		134
	9.6.2	. Adding equipment 🐄	135
	9.6.3	. Group of equipment (folders) 🖤	138

9.6.4. Configuring sub equipment	
10. OPTIONS	
	1.42
10.2 Appear ance	
10.3 STARTIP	154
10.4. Chambers	
10.5. Email	
10.6. SMS	
10.7. Cloud/Mobile	
10.8. DATA LOGGER OPTIONS	
10.9. Servers	
10.9.1. Modbus servers	
10.9.2. ASCII Servers	
10.9.1. Direct connect	
10.9.2. UDP Server	
10.10. ADVANCED	
10.10.1. Black box (background circular recorder)	
11. USERS	
11.1. MANAGING USERS	
11.1.1. Creating a new user	
11.1.2. Managing groups	
12 RECIPES	183
	100
12.1. How does the recipe work?	
12.2. RECIPE EDITOR	
12.3. OVERVIEW OF THE RECIPE EDITOR	
12.4. WORK WITH THE TREE VIEW	
12.5. WORK WITH THE GRID VIEW	
12.0. THE MAP VIEW	
12.7. HOW TO ADD A TOP-LEVEL ELEMENT	
12.0. ADD AN EMITTERTER.	194
12.10 ADD ACTIONS TO A LAYER	194
12.11. USING TAG OR PROPERTIES (LIKE GLOBAL VARIABLES)	
12.12. USING OF AN EXTERNAL SCRIPT LIBRARY	
12.13. Use of local variables	
12.14. LOOPS	
12.15. CONDITIONAL LAYERS	
12.16. MODIFY A VALUE WITH REPERCUSSIONS IN THE OTHER LAYERS	
12.17. OFFSETS	
12.18. SEARCH AND REPLACE	
12.19. WORK IN THICKNESS	
12.20. SCRIPT TAB	
12.21. CHART VIEW	
12.22. SCRIPT RECIPE EDITOR	
12.25. CONVERT RECIPE CSV 10 KCP	
12.24. EAPORT OLD CRISTAL LIES RECIPES TO CSV FILES	
12.2.5. CONVERTOED CRYSTAL EVES RECIPES TO CRYSTAL XE RECIPES	
12.27. CONVERT AMBER RECIPES TO CRYSTAL XE SCRIPT	
12.27.1. Preliminary	224
12.27.2. Using the Amber recipe converter	
12.27.3. Conversion table	
12.27.4. Limitations	
12.28. USE A DIALOG BOX (FORM) IN A RECIPE	
12.28.1. Create the dialog box	
12.28.2. Create the Recipe	
12.28.3. Run the recipe	
12.29. AUTOMATIC REPORT GENERATION	
12.29.1. Default automatic report	

12.2	9.2. Customize the automatic report	
13. F	ORMS AND OBJECTS	
13.1.	INTRODUCTION	
13.2.	OBJECT LIBRARY	
13.3.	SETTINGS	
13.4.	FORMS	
13.4	.1. CREATING FORMS.	
13.5.	FORM PROPERTIES AND EVENTS	
13.3	.1. Basic properties and OnCreate event.	
13.5	OBJECT DRODEDTIES AND EVENTS	
13.0.	DESECT TROTERTIES AND EVENTS	
13.0	2 Advanced settings	266
13.7.	TYPES OF OBJECT	
13.7	1. Basic tab (list of equipment)	
13.7	.2. Usual tab	
13.7	<i>.3. ON/OFF tab</i>	
13.7	.4. Windows tab	
13.7	5. OTHERS	
14. P	LATEN AUTOMATION	
1.4.1	<b>P</b>	244
14.1.	EDITING BATCH USING THE BATCH EDITOR	
14.2. 14.2	EDITING BATCH USING THE SCRIPT EDITOR	
14.3. 14.4	MODIEV DATHS INDIVIDUATEV AT ANYTIME	
14.5	MOVING A PLATEN FOR A SIMPLE MOVEMENT	
1		
15. D	IRECT CONNECT	
15.1.	INTRODUCTION	
15.2.	EXAMPLE WITH THE RIBER SOFT CLIENT APPLICATION	
15.3.	PROTOCOL	
16. D	ATA LOGGER	
16.1.	INTRODUCTION	
16.2.	PARAMETERS	
16.3.	DATA SENT TO THE DATA LOGGER	
16.4.	PROTOCOL	
16.5.	DATA FLOW STRUCTURE	
10.0.	EXAMPLE OF DATA EXCHANGED WITH A SERVER.	
17. D	YNAMIC DATA EXCHANGE (DDE)	
17.1.		
17.2.	DDE EXCHANGES WITH EXCEL	
17.2	1. Display live data from Crystal XE: Hot DDE Link	
17.2	.2. From Crystal XE request data to Excel (Using script / DDE_Request)	
17.2		
17.2	<ul> <li>From Ercel write data to Crystal XE (Using macro / DDEPoke)</li> </ul>	374
17.2	6. From Excel read data in Crystal XE (Using macro / DDEI out)	
17.3.	DDE Exchanges with Word	
17.3	.1. From Crystal XE send data to Word	
17.3	.2. From Crystal XE execute a method in Word	
17.4.	FROM EXCEL OR WORD, SEND DATA TO CRYSTAL XE (USING MACRO / DDEEXECUTE)	
17.5.	DDE Exchange with LibreOffice Calc	
17.5	.1. Display live data from Crystal XE (Hot DDE Link)	
17.6.	MORE INFORMATION ON DDE	
18. C	BJECT LINKING AND EMBEDDING (OLE)	
19. F	AQ	
19.1.	DISPLAY PROBLEM IN CHARTS	

19.2.	USING OF NATIONAL INSTRUMENTS CARDS	
19.	.2.1. Installation procedure	
19.3.	USING CRYSTAL WITH ARDUINO	
20.	ANNEXE A - WRITE A RECIPE BY EXAMPLE	
20.1.	OPERATING BASICS	
20.2.	MORE INFORMATION ABOUT RECIPE EDITION	
20.3.	LOOP EDITION	400
20.4.	IN-DEPTH INFORMATION ABOUT LOOP USAGE	
20.5.	RECIPE EDITION: FINALIZATION	
20.6.	IN DEPTH INFORMATION ABOUT RECIPE EDITION	410
20.7.	RECIPE EDITION: ADDITIONAL VIEWINGS	
21.	LICENSE	

# **1. ABOUT THIS MANUAL**



We attach importance to the environmental impact and for this reason we do not

recommend the printing of this manual.

In addition, reading is made easier with the search and navigation tools offered by PDF file readers such as Adobe Acrobat Reader.

In Adobe Acrobat Reader, to display the navigation pane, press the following button (in a red rectangle):



# 2. INSTALLATION

# 2.1. Installing Crystal XE

If Crystal XE is preinstalled on your computer, the default directories are the following:

Program directory: c:\riber\CrystalXE

Project directory: d:\riber\<Project name>

If it is not installed, execute the setup program and follow the installation instructions (select the demo *Files*) in the dialog box to complete the installation.

(1) In *Crystal XE*, a project corresponds to the directory name in which you can find the data *Files* specifying your application (configuration *File*, synoptic, security *Files* etc.).

A *Crystal XE* shortcut icon should be available on your desktop. If not, create the shortcut from the 'CrystalXE.exe' *File* located in the directory: *C:\riber\CrystalXE*.

# 2.2. License key

A license key is required to use the full functionality of Crystal XE.

You will be asked for a software license key when running the software.

Note down your software information and send it to RIBER customer service to receive your license key.

Welcome with CRYSTA	L XE	×
		RIBER SOFT
	Important information: this software is protected by a softw         If you skip this step, XE will run in demo mode: communication         To enter a license key, please follow these steps :         1) Note the identifier and the version         BA65-ABEF       2.03 build 5         Send that information by mail to customerservice@riber. Or communicate this number by phone at our customer set         2) after receiving the license, enter the key here:         3)       Record license	vare key ns will be disabled. fr ervice +331 3996 6591
		Skip for demo

If you have no license, you can test the software in demonstration mode.

In demonstration mode, communication with the devices is not possible, however, all the other functionalities are operational.

# 2.3. General information

# 2.3.1. Multiple instances

By default, it is not possible to open Crystal XE several times. If you try to open the application several times the following message will appear:

Crystalxe	×
CRYSTAL XE is already open ! To enable multiple instances, change the	option in the ini file
	OK

In some cases, it may be necessary to run the application more than once simultaneously. In this case, here is the procedure to follow:

o Make a copy of the program folder and all the files it contains to another location (example: c:\riber\CrystalXE2).

o Open the CrystalXE.ini file in this new folder using a text editor such as NotePad.

o In the [Config] section, change the line AllowMultipleInstance = 0 to AllowMultipleInstance = 1.

o Do the same in the original program folder.

#### Why duplicate the program files?

Note that the name of the last project used is saved in the crystalxe.ini file in the program folder. Thus, in order to be able to run CrystalXE several times with different projects, the program folders must be separated.

## 2.3.2. Clock, timestamp and real time engine

In SCADA software, time management, stability and reliability are critical. For this reason, every effort has been made during the development of Crystal XE to offer the application maximum performance so as not to affect the results obtained. We attach the utmost importance to ensuring that critical times are not affected, which is what makes Crystal XE so reliable and trustworthy.

#### CPU Usage

You can constantly monitor CPU activity via the progress bar at the top left of Crystal XE's main screen. The color of this progress bar changes to yellow and then to red as activation increases.

When the situation becomes critical, an alert will be generated.



Excessive activity may indicate the presence of a virus or a scan in progress for indexing or virus scanning.

#### Time stamped data and clock

All time stamped data uses the PC clock but not only that, the recipe scheduler also uses the PC clock to calculate the time of each layer. So if the time changes during a recipe, the duration of the current layer could be affected. To avoid this, Crystal uses its own internal clock during critical moments. You can tell which clock Crystal is using by looking at the bottom right of the screen.



Crystal XE uses the Windows clock



Crystal XE uses the internal clock

Since the user can update the clock or when connected to the Internet, the operating system itself updates the PC clock using the Internet time server.

When Crystal is running but inactive (no recipe in progress...), the Windows clock is used. In this case, if the system clock is updated, this will only affect graphics and recorders (CSV data files).

Therefore, when the date and time changes, this information is recorded in the historical log so that the information can be retrieved.

When you are connected to the Internet, we recommend that you disable the connection to the Internet time server.

Please note that communication with devices and data servers is not affected by a time change, as they use a thread independent of the system clock. This thread is not affected by CPU activity either, as it is a priority task. In this way, the times used in recipes will remain reliable with a resolution of around 10ms.

# 3. BACKUP

This option allows you to save all the files necessary for the project in a single compressed file.

By adding the program directory option, this allows you to create a clone of the project with the Crystal XE application in a single zip file.

From the main menu, select File / Backup

File	View	Recipe	Tools	Editors	Setup
	lew				۲
Ê	) pen				×
R	eopen				۲
<u> </u>	ave				Þ
<u> B</u>	ackup				
₿ <b>₩</b>	lose al	l forms			
E, B	ro <u>w</u> se	project d	irector	y	
E, B	rows <u>e</u>	program	directo	ory	
<b>爺</b> E	<u>x</u> it				

#### The following window opens:



By clicking on the log check box, a list box appears allowing you to choose the duration of the log files.



Same for the Records directory



If you select *Records directory box*, large files might be generated.

### Then check the files to add:

Ken Backup files in a zip file	
Current project	
Default files	: 3.7 MB
Log directory	0
Records directory (*.CSV, *.REC)	0
Additional files	
Recipe Batch	
C21DZ\Cal-Q1-17.rcp	
C21DZ\Cal-Q1-17_SANS_SOUSRECETTE.rcp	
C21DZ\end GaAs growth.rcp	
C21DZ\GaAs deoxidation.rcp	
C21DZ\HEMT active layers.rcp	
C21DZ\HEMT growth.rcp	
C21DZ/MQW.rcp	
C21DZ/MQW_SANS_SOUSRECETTE.rcp	
C21DZ\none.rcp	
C21DZ\test - Copie.rcp	
C21DZ\test.rcp	
C21DZ\testA.rcp	
C21DZ\test_3sec.rcp	
C21DZ\test_4sec.rcp	
Other files	
All program directory (including CrystalXE.exe, templates)	27.5 MB
Create zip file	Cancel

To add also the program directory, check the box in the Other files section.



## And Press "Create zip file"

### Give a name to the backup file:

XE Enregistrer so	us					8
Enregistrer <u>d</u> ans :	📃 Bureau	-				
*	Nom		Modifié le	Туре	Taille	
Accès rapide	3SP	rC e vetal	17/02/2020 16:46	Dossier de fichiers		
	imec ISA300	rerystal	10/07/2019 10:06	Dossier de fichiers		
Bureau	Manual		24/02/2020 14:55	Dossier de fichiers		
	temp		27/01/2020 15:02	Dossier de fichiers		
	tmp pour HR	RL .	24/10/2019 15:48	Dossier de fichiers		
Bibliothéques	🗾 CD - Raccou	rci	11/04/2018 11:04	Raccourci	2 Ko	
	Crystal - Rac	courci	25/11/2019 09:01	Raccourci	2 Ko	
Ce PC						
Reseau						
	<u>N</u> om du fichier :	2020_02_24Backup_CRYSTAL >	KE2.03 build 6BETA 4.zip		-	Enregistrer
	<u>T</u> ype :	zip file (*.zip)			-	Annuler

And press Save

Kë Backup files in a zip file	
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\PressureGauge.equ	> dor 🔺
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\PSSI.equ> done	
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\Pumps.equ> done	e 👘
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\Pyrometer.equ>	done
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\QCM.equ> done	
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\Quartz.equ> don	e 📗
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\RF_Source.equ>	done
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\Rheed.equ> done	e 👘
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\S3PCAlarm.equ>	done
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\Agile	nt_tv30
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\AIM.	sub>
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\alarm	n.sub>
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\Anak	ogInput.
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\Analo	ogOutpu
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\ardui	ino_axis
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\Axis	Pos.sut
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\bake	out.sub
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\band	lit_single
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\Clust	terContr
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\Clust	terPositic
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\cryo	CTI.sub
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\CVEP	o.sub>
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\CVEP	_Interlc
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\Cygr	nus.sub
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\DIDC	06.sub -
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\Doub	oleAxisM
Adding file C:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Equipment\SubEquipment\egun	i.sub>
A	bort

If the program check box has been checked, the zip file will contains two directories:

📱   💽 💶 =		Extraire	2020_02_	24_test_Backup_CR\	/STAL XE2.03 build	l 6BETA 4.zip			×
Fichier Accueil Partage	Affichage	Outils de dossier com	pressé						~ ?
← → ∽ ↑ 📳 → 2020_02	2_24_test_Backup	_CRYSTAL XE2.03 build (	5BETA 4.zip →				~	ō	Q
Nom	Туре		Taille compressée	Protégé pa	Taille	Ratio	Modif	é le	
DEMO_C21DZ	Doss	ier de fichiers							
Program	Doss	ier de fichiers					24/02/	2020 15:14	
									_
2 élément(s)									

To open the project, extract this zip fil into a new directory.

Go in the program directory and click on CrystalXE.exe to launch Crystal.

When opening Crystal XE, you will be asked to select the project folder. Choose the folder that has just been created.

# 4. FILE DESCRIPTIONS

Crystal XE files are distributed in two directories.

- Crystal XE program files are located by default in the directory c:\riber\CrystalXE.
- Crystal XE project files

To browse these folders, from the main menu, click File and then "Browse project directory .." or "Browse program directory .."



File menu that shows the "Browse" items.

# 4.1. Files in program folder

The program floder contains all files needed for the application. When installing a new version of Crystal XE, this directory is renamed with the current date and time. So it is possible to go back to the previous version by opening the file CrystalXE.exe in the old directory. For that raison, it is not recommended to save the data files in the Program directory because they will be lost during a software update.

$\leftarrow \rightarrow \checkmark \uparrow \square \rightarrow Ce$	PC > OS (C:) > riber > Crystal)	KE >			ٽ ~	م
✓ 🧧 CrystalXE	^ Nom ^	Modifié le	Туре	Taille		
🗸 📙 Help	Help	20/02/2020 14:49	Dossier de fichiers			
📙 logs	Libraries	20/02/2020 14:49	Dossier de fichiers			
📙 pdf	Sound	20/02/2020 14:49	Dossier de fichiers			
Libraries	Template	20/02/2020 14:49	Dossier de fichiers			
Sound	CrystalXE.exe	20/02/2020 14:48	Application	7 291 Ko		
Tamplata	CrystalXE.ini	21/02/2020 08:31	Paramètres de configuration	1 Ko	Ciletiana de	him h affinh an
	debug.txt	21/02/2020 08:30	Document texte	1 Ko	Selectionnez un fic	nier a amoner.
Champer	licence.txt	04/10/2019 13:37	Document texte	5 Ko		
Y 📙 Equipment	📓 unins000.dat	20/02/2020 14:49	Fichier DAT	28 Ko		
SubEquipme	ent 🔤 unins000.exe	20/02/2020 14:49	Application	795 Ko		
PLC						
Regulator						

The content of the program folder is the following:

- **CrystalXE.exe:** this is the main executable file for Crystal XE. Simplicity makes a program reliable. For this reason, Crystal XE does not require other files like framework or other external modules. It possibly uses two DLLs which are in the library folder when using email or when using the cloud. This feature enhances the reliability of the software. This also makes it easy to install by simply copying the program folder to another PC.
- CrystalXE.ini: contains some information like the current project to load at startup, this file is a text file that it is readable with any text editor but we don't recommend to modify it.
- **licence.txt:** it is a text file that contains the license that was approved during software installation.
- **Unins000.dat and Unins000.exe**: these files are used to uninstall Crystal XE. They are executed by windows when uninstalling the software.

#### Help folder:

This folder contains:

- The Crystal XE help file which notably contains help on scripts.
- The Crystal XE help operator which contains an help on equipment, subequipment and devices.

#### Libraries folder:

🚯 libeay32.dll	21/12/2019 12:01	Application exten	2 240 KB
📓 OpenSSL License.txt	31/08/2016 13:14	TXT File	7 KB
🔐 ReadMe.txt	21/12/2019 12:01	TXT File	3 KB
ssleay32.dll	21/12/2019 12:01	Application exten	378 KB

Content of libraries directory

Theses files are needed to access to the cloud or to send data to the data logger, or to send email.

**libeay32.dll** contains encryption functions which allow for coded communications over networks. This file is opensource and is used in many opensource programs to help with SSL communication

**OpenSSL** is a software library for applications that secure communications over computer networks against eavesdropping or need to identify the party at the other end. It is widely used by Internet servers, including the majority of HTTPS websites. OpenSSL contains an open-source implementation of the SSL and TLS protocols. The core library, written in the C programming language, implements basic cryptographic functions and provides various utility functions. Wrappers allowing the use of the OpenSSL library in a variety of computer languages are available.

The OpenSSL Software Foundation (OSF) represents the OpenSSL project in most legal capacities including contributor license agreements, managing donations, and so on. OpenSSL Software Services (OSS) also represents the OpenSSL project, for Support Contracts.

**ssleay32.dll** is a module associated with The OpenSSL Toolkit from The OpenSSL Project, <u>http://www.openssl.org/</u>.

The other files are text files that you can read, such as license files.

#### Sound folder:

This folder contains sound files that can be used in the securities to make a sound when an alarm occurred.

#### **Template folder:**

This folder is very important. It contains all the files needed to communicate with the devices, all the files to manage equipment and also script that are used for the ramp or other processes.

The template folder contains other sub folder which are the following:



#### Chamber folder:

This folder contains chamber models that can be used in the hardware configuration. By default, there is one template in this folder: C21\_DZ.xfg. The default extension for this kind of file is .xfg

#### Config folder:

This folder contains system models that can be used in the hardware configuration.

#### Equipment folder:

The equipment models are saved here. These models are displayed in hardware configuration, to the right of the window, when you click on equipment, in the equipment palette.



Equipment templates in hardware configuration.

This folder contains also a directory named subequipment. These files are used by the equipment and are also templates. The extension of sub equipment is .Sub.

#### PLC folder:

This folder contains files that are used by hardware configuration. These files contain the list of transfer automation alarms.

#### **Regulator folder:**

This folder contains files that are used by hardware configuration (device files). These files are used by the device view.



Regulator templates in hardware configuration

Two files are used for each device. One is the device driver (.rgr), and the other is an image file (.bmp) that is displayed in the device view.

#### Report sub folder:

This folder contains reports templates that can be used in recipes.

- LO\_CalcTemplate.ods
- b LO\_ImpressTemplate.odp
- 📄 LO\_WriterDemo.odt
- E LO\_WriterReport.odt
- 📸 LO\_WriterReport.pas
- MS\_ExcelTemplate.xlsm
- MS\_ExcelTemplate.xlsx
- MS\_WordReport.docx
- MS\_WordReport.pas
- MS\_wordTemplate.docm
- MS\_WordTemplate.docx

We supply two types of templates for Libre office (LO) and Microsoft office (MS).

#### Script sub folder:

This folder contains script files (.pas) that are used in equipment, sub-equipment or devices.

Some script files can also be used by the user such as const\_colors which contains constant colors.

# 4.2. Files in project directory

The project directory contains all files necessary for the project to supervise the Riber system. Generally, this directory is located in the disk d:\riber\

It must not be in the program directory because when updating the program, the directory path will be lost.

→ * ↑ - × Ce PC >	OS (C:) > riber > _DEMO_C21DZ		~	Ō	
m	Modifié le	Туре	Taille		
Backup	20/02/2020 15:25	Dossier de fichiers			
Batch	29/10/2019 16:11	Dossier de fichiers			
Data	20/02/2020 11:14	Dossier de fichiers			
Forms	28/10/2019 09:01	Dossier de fichiers			
log	21/02/2020 08:28	Dossier de fichiers			
Pictures	27/10/2016 12:11	Dossier de fichiers			
Recipe	10/02/2020 15:16	Dossier de fichiers			
Record	21/02/2020 08:28	Dossier de fichiers			
Script	05/08/2019 13:31	Dossier de fichiers			
Template	10/04/2018 16:53	Dossier de fichiers			
config.xfg	20/02/2020 16:24	Fichier XFG		48 Ko	
data.dat	20/02/2020 16:24	Fichier DAT		44 Ko	
Environment.ced	21/02/2020 08:29	Eyes Document		3 Ko	
securities.sec	21/02/2020 08:28	Fichier SEC		91 Ko	

**config.xfg**: This XML file contains all the information of the hardware configuration as well as the setup/options. It is not recommended to modify this file yourself.

**data.dat**: This XML file contains all the data that the user can modify like the minimum setpoints, maximum setpoints etc.. all the data that can be change in the setup of all equipment and sub equipment, and also the setup of all devices.

**Environment.ced**: This XML file contains the configuration of the charts tab, the equipment tab (order of the equipment, if there are hidden or visible etc..)

**Securities.sec:** This XML file contains all the information of the securities tab for each chamber.

#### Backup directory:

$\leftrightarrow \rightarrow \checkmark \uparrow$ $\blacksquare \ll$ OS (C:) :	> riber > _DEMO_C21DZ > Backup	ٽ ~	
Nom	Modifié le	Туре	Taille
📓 config1.xfg	25/10/2019 15:45	Fichier XFG	48 Ko
📓 config2.xfg	25/10/2019 15:46	Fichier XFG	48 Ko
📓 config3.xfg	25/10/2019 16:02	Fichier XFG	48 Ko
📓 config4.xfg	25/10/2019 16:06	Fichier XFG	48 Ko
📓 config5.xfg	25/10/2019 16:11	Fichier XFG	48 Ko
📔 config6.xfg	25/10/2019 16:12	Fichier XFG	48 Ko
📓 config7.xfg	28/10/2019 09:01	Fichier XFG	48 Ko
📔 config8.xfg	25/09/2019 13:32	Fichier XFG	45 Ko
📔 config9.xfg	29/10/2019 18:11	Fichier XFG	45 Ko
📓 config10.xfg	29/10/2019 18:19	Fichier XFG	46 Ko
📓 config11.xfg	29/10/2019 18:22	Fichier XFG	46 Ko
📓 config12.xfg	04/11/2019 15:56	Fichier XFG	46 Ka
📓 config13.xfg	03/12/2019 16:41	Fichier XFG	46 Ko
📓 config14.xfg	07/01/2020 11:50	Fichier XFG	46 Ko
📔 config15.xfg	08/01/2020 11:55	Fichier XFG	46 Ko
📓 config16.xfg	10/02/2020 13:48	Fichier XFG	47 Ko
📔 config17.xfg	10/02/2020 13:49	Fichier XFG	47 Ko
📓 config18.xfg	20/02/2020 14:48	Fichier XFG	48 Ko
📓 config19.xfg	20/02/2020 15:11	Fichier XFG	48 Ko
Config20.xfg	20/02/2020 15:12	Fichier XFG	48 Kr

The backup directory contains the last 20 changes in the hardware configuration. You can go back to a previous configuration by using the folloning button in the hardware configuration:



Button to restore previous configurations

Clicking this button will open a context menu with a maximum of the last 20 configurations:



List of previous configurations

You can click on one of them to open an older configuration. For more details, see the hardware configuration section in this manual.

#### **Batch directory**

This directory contains all the batch files uses by the transportation system.

The batch files are in XML format.

#### **Data directory**

Some temporary files are saved in this directory.

• .prf files: are profile files for ramping.

• **Recipe\_conversion\_table.ini**: contains necessary data to convert old recipe files. This directory can also contain user data files such as growth rate data used for thick recipes or the content of graphics, etc.

#### Forms directory

In this directory, two kind of files can be found:

- **.sysform** files: these files are used by user view forms like the main user view whose filename is mainuserview.sysform
- .form files: these files are additional forms created by users or specially developed for the project.

#### Log directory

This directory contains several types of log files.

- <date>.log : contains the historical log which is displayed at the bottom of the screen (example of file: 2020\_01\_07.log).
- **Recipe log files** whose name contains the date and time and name of the chamber. These files contain the historical log which is displayed in the recipe tab during the execution of a recipe.
- <date\_time>\_Batch.log: These files contain the historical log which is displayed in the automation tab during the execution of a batch.
- <date\_time>\_Batch.ini: Contains the main information of a batch like the start time, the number of platens and for each platen the path with date and time information.

#### **Pictures directory**

This directory is reserved for storing images that could be used in the forms.

#### **Recipe directory**

Contains several sub directories, one per process chamber.

On each sub directory, several files can be found:

- .rcp files: XML files created with the recipe editor.
- .pas files: Pascal files created with the script editor.

#### **Record directory**

Contains all the CSV files recorded by the recorders of each chambers.

This directory can also be browsed in the recorder tab of each room, on the right side of the window.

CRYSTAL XE 64 bits - XE90_CN_KIP_SYS15120_MBE412_3-5_Cluster - Version 2.03 build 6BETA 4 ********** Simulation	mode: communication disabled ************	
File View Recipe Tools Editors Setup Window Help		
KIP 3-5 - MBE412 - Cluster sys15120		RIBER SOFT 🔅
Main 🕰 Growth 🗟 Load 🗟 Plasma 🗟 Parking		
🤹 Equipment 🔔 Security 👗 Recipe 🖄 Charts 🔛 Recorder 🕼 Statistics 📷 Device	25	
New 📂 Open/Edit 🔅 Add	1	
Default recorder	✓ Filter by date	
Record Stopped	Janvier 2020	février 2020 🕨
General Column list	lun. mar. mer. jeu. ven. sam. dim. 30 31 <b>1 2 3 4 5</b>	mer. jeu. ven. sam. dim. 1 2
Record number: 2	6 7 8 9 10 11 12 3 4 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 10 11	5 6 7 8 9 12 13 14 15 16
Template : Default	20 21 22 23 24 25 26 17 18 27 28 29 30 31 24 25	
	2 3	4 5 6 7 8
Output file name :	2020-02-21 09-12-00 Growth bake out ricine.csv   41107h	vtes
🔯  Record 2020-02-21_11-51-51_Growth_bake out ricipe.csv 🛛 🖉 🞇	2020-02-21_11-51-51_Growth_bake out ricipe.csv   42420 b	ytes
Start time: 21/02/2020 11:51:51		
Tringer mode		
Time 2 🗧 Sec		
Recipe layers		
	1	1
All events Criticals and warnings Communication User events		Popup window on alarm
		Never 👻 📰

Browse the CSV files from the Crystal interface

#### Script directory

This directory contains users script files that can be used in other scripts.

These scripts are generally use as libraries of functions and / or libraries of constants.

#### **Template directory**

The template files that are in the project directory are similar to those in the program directory, but they are specific to the projects.

If the same template file exists in both the program folder and in the project folder, the one in the project folder will be loaded (priority for project files) The files in this folder appear in red in hardware config.

#### Special device templates:



In red are the device templates located in the project directory.

Special equipment templates:

In red are the equipment templates located in the project directory.

# **5. INTERFACE OVERVIEW**



# 5.1. Icons overview

## 5.1.1. User icon

Click on the following icon to display the list of users and log in (if user restrictions are enabled):



The following icon indicates that you are logged in or that user restrictions are disabled:



Click on the icon to login:

File	View	Recipe	Tools	Editors	S
2	6				
	Operat	tor			
	Mainte	nance			
	Admini	strator			
	Franck				
Р	assword	1			
		Show	v passwo	ord	
	locoff	ОК	C	ancel	

Select the user and enter the relative password.

You can open the *Users administration* window by right-clicking on the user icon and selecting *Manage users*.

🐹 Users administration					•••
User restrictions are enab	led				
Enable auto logOFF after a time (	min)				
Operator	🕂 Add	User name	Franck		
Maintenance	1 Up	Decouverd			
Administrator	J Down	Password	1		
Franck	O Demour		Authorization group		
	W Remove		Administrator	~	it groups
			Chambers		
			Growth		
Change admin password				ОК	Cancel

See section about users for more information

# 5.1.2. Simulator icon

The following icon indicates that *Crystal XE* is operating in simulation mode.



In simulation mode, all communications with peripheral devices are disabled and some values are simulated.

You can switch from *Simulation mode* to *Connected mode* by checking the corresponding box in the *Project configuration* window (the current user's rights must allow this change). On the menu bar, select *Setup > Hardware configuration* to open the *Project configuration* window.

## 5.1.3. Alarm icon

The alarm icon indicates that at least one alarm is activated throughout the program.



In that case, the background color becomes red:



Click on the alarm icon to display all alarms in a pop-up window.



# 5.2. Event history

The history box, at the bottom of the interface, displays all events (logs). Events are as daily text files (with '.log' extension) to your program directory > *Log*.



You can choose to display only a specific type of events by using the filter tabs:

All events Criticals and warnings Communication User events

- Critical and warnings: security agents related events (alarms)
- Communication: connection to the devices

- User events: actions performed by users

To delete the history of events, right-click on the history zone and select Clear all logs.

## 5.2.1. Log viewer

Refer to the Menu "Tools / log viewer" for more details.

#### **Event notifications**

Use the combo boxes located in the bottom right-hand corner of the interface to define when users should be notified by a pop-up window or by an email alert (available only if the email option is enabled).



Use the corresponding drop-down list to select your choice:

**All events:** enables Email alerts/pop-up windows for all events (critical and warning alarms, user events, communication alarms)

**Critical and warnings**: enables Email alerts/pop-up windows for critical level or warning level alarms.

**Critical only**: enables Email alerts/pop-up windows for critical level alarms only **Never:** disables all Email alerts/pop-up windows

# 6. MENU BAR FEATURES

# 6.1. File menu



On the menu bar, the *File* menu provides access to file related features such as opening new *File*s, saving your configuration, etc.

File/New: Allows you to create a form, a script or a new project.

## 6.1.1. File/Open



Allow you to open:

- A form to display it.
- A script file to edit it.
- Load security configuration: will replace the current security configuration.
- User data: load a previously saved data file (for more details, see the chapter "File descriptions")
- Equipment views: load a .ced file (for more details, see the chapter "File descriptions")
- Chart: load a chart file.
- All charts will load a packed.cpk file which contains all the charts of the chart tab of each chamber.
- A Project: you must specify the directory where is located all the project files (and especially the .xfg file).

# 6.1.2. File / Open recent:

This menu displays the previously loaded files and projects. A line separates file names and project names.

# 6.1.3. File/Save:



#### Allows to save:

- The current securities configuration in a .sec file
- The current **user data** in a .dat file
- The current **Equipment view** in a .ced file.
- Export the **black box**: this option is only useful if you have enabled the black box in the option. The black box contains all the communication frames of all the device for a time. This can be useful to debug communcation problems.
- **All charts**: save the content of all the charts of all the chart tab in a .cpk file that can be loaded later from the menu File/Load all charts.

### 6.1.4. Backup:

Allows you to create a zip file that contain all or some projects files. For more details, see the **BACKUP chapter**.

### 6.1.5. Close all forms

Will close all floating windows. Chart opens by the contextual menu "Add in a new chart" are not closed. Same for the forms open from the user view that display details view of equipment or sub equipment, these are not closed.

### 6.1.6. Browse project and program directories

- On the *File* menu, you can access easily to *Crystal XE* program and project directories by clicking on the following items:

冠 Bro<u>w</u>se project directory... 冠 Brows<u>e</u> program directory...

#### 6.1.7. Exit

Close the application (after confirmation)

## 6.2. View menu



The *View* menu features mainly displays information about the system (scripts, data, connection etc.).

## 6.2.1. Console

The console is a pop-up window mainly used to debug or give users information about executing scripts.

The console appears automatically when a function *WriteConsole()* is used in a script:



# 6.2.2. Memory



This information display the memory occupation of Crystal XE.

Crystal XE consumes very little RAM memory. This information is useful only in the case where a lot of resources are used in order to follow the evolution. This information is mainly used by Crystal developers to monitor that all tasks do not consume memory unnecessarily.

# 6.2.3. Splash window

This open again the window that appears during the loading of Crystal XE.

CRYSTAL XE			
Unlimited license			RIBERSOFT
	Crys	al XE	
Supervisory Con	trol And Date	Acquisition sof	tware with IDE
Creating objects USING WINDOWS MESSAGING F Initializing Loading project C:\riber\temp\ Starting services Running application	OR SCRIPTand THF	EAD FOR COMMUNICATIO	DN
Ready			
			Close

# 6.2.4. Diagnostic

Click on the Diagnostic item to display information about your system in a pop-up window including used memory, Email and SMS service, number of equipment in your project, etc. Full screen

Select *Full screen* or press the F11 key to switch from normal screen to full screen mode and conversely.

In full screen mode, press the [ALT] key to show/hide the menu bar.

## 6.2.5. GSM inspector

This open this GSM manager window:

SE GSM (SMS) inspector	
Run Stop Initializing1/11	OSR RI Risd
Image: Comparison of SMS in buffer:     0/1     Comparison of SMS       Total SMS sent:     0     Status:     Closed	
SMS in queue SMS sent	
Send a new SMS now	
Clear log Save log as	
	Close

This is useful if you want to test the sending of text messages (SMS) and also to check the communication with the GSM modem.

## 6.2.6. Cloud inspector

This item opens the following window:

Cloud inspector		•••
Current main step: HTTP_REFRESH_DATA Current thread step: TCS_Received Clear Log enabled	Statistics Last respons time: 62 ms Minimum respons time: 31 ms Maximum respons time: 234 ms	Reset
21/02/20 16:14:05.083: Opening inspector 21/02/20 16:14:05.845: Read client_send 21/02/20 16:14:07.843: Send 5 tags values, frame	length=66	
21/02/20 16:14:07.922: Read client_send 21/02/20 16:14:09.939: Read client_send 21/02/20 16:14:10.863: Send 6 tags values, frame 21/02/20 16:14:11.953: Read client_send	length=77	
21/02/20 16:14:13:883: Send 4 tags values, frame i	engm=ss	
Total tags count: 83		Close

In this window, it is possible to display the communication activity between Crystal XE and the cloud server. This is useful to check the communication with the cloud server. It is also possible to display the data that is exchanged with the cloud (click on the data tab to display the data in a tree view)

XE Cloud inspector		000
Current main step: HTTP_REFRESH_DATA Current thread step: TCS_Received Clear	Statistics Last respons time: 78 ms Minimum respons time: 31 ms Maximum respons time: 234 ms	Reset
Log Data		
⊡ Batch		
··· CPU_Usage		
··· Disk_Space		
ErrStatus		
Memory_Space		
Mousemoving Times		
ProjectDirectory		
ProjectTitle		
RampStartMode		
SimulationMode		
Tag		
UnitPressure		
UnitTemperature		
Total tags count: 83		Close
# 6.2.7. Script explorer



All the scripts in your system are displayed in a tree structure on the left side of the window. For each equipment and sub equipment, the number of scripts is displayed in brackets.

Select an item in the tree structure to display the scripts list in the box.

When a script is currently running, it appears in red.

The scripts edited within forms and objects are listed at the bottom of the tree structure:

App > Forms > YourForm (>Object):



If you want an edited script to appear in the *Script explorer*, you must enable it from the Pascal editor (= script editor).

Remark: The Pascal editor opens when you create a new script or when you edit an existing script. Scripts are either integrated in a visual component event, or as a script recipe, or as a .pas file outside a recipe or on the event of a tag of a equipment or device.

To do so, on the menu bar of the Pascal editor, select *Options > Edit options*:



Then in the pop-up window, check the following box:

Script options				8
Compilation				
Add source info in byte code (for de	takes more bug only)	ame)		
Execution mode				
Number of byte code per cycle	1	8		
• Execution time (us) per cycle	30	8	(default 30)	
Other options				
Exclusive task: locktask enabled (NOT	RECOMMAI	NDED, c	an slow down the	e application)
Wait the end of execution if another	event want	to run ti	his script again (=	=do not interrupt)
Default			Ok	Cancel

Select a script in the box to display the script information:



Double-click on a script or click on the Show source button to open the Script debug tool allowing you to monitor the execution of the script.

The debug tool can be automatically opened when a script is executed using the functions: *ShowSource(0)* (recommended) and *ShowSource(1)* (advanced).

```
Begin
ShowSource(0);
```

#### 6.2.8. Data explorer

The Data explorer lists, in a tree structure, all data of your system.

In the tree structure, expand the lists and select a property. The information of the selected property appears on the right side of the window.



Depending on the property, different types of data can be stored: **Numeric value**: measured value, output power value, etc. **Enumeration**: checked/ unchecked, on/ off, etc. **Texts** (strings): equipment name



From this menu you can convert recipe in CSV format to rcp files and also convert old crystal recipe files (From Crystal Eyes) to Crystal XE recipe files.

⇒ For more details see the section Recipe converters in the RECIPES chapters.

# 6.4. Tools menu

The *Tools* menu offers several debugging features allowing you, for example, to test the connection and behavior of devices.

# 6.4.1. Test tools



#### Modbus client

The Modbus client test tool allows you to test the connection to a Modbus device either using TCP/ IP or serial communication mode.

The communication port must not be opened when performing the test. If you want to test on a serial port that is already open in Crystal, you must first deactivate it from the Device tab.



#### Modbus server

With the Modbus server test tool, you can select a template and emulate a device (regulators, etc.) in order to debug. Device tags appear in a table and you can simulate different values.

🗱 CRYSTAL XE 2.03 build 5	888
	RIBER SOFT
Connection Simulation Statistics	
Template file name: C: soft\_CrystalXE\Insta Open template Device address : 1	IDr (Template Repulator (£2500_Temperature.rgr
TCP/IP Serial	
Local IP Address Port 192.168.1.184 502 Open socket Disconnect Active #FAISE SocketError #ALSE	- Error simulation in TCP header Send frame transaction to 0 Send protocol identifier to 45 Send frame length to 1 Add 2 characters to the frame
Error simulation in modbus frame Do not answer Answer only after n request 3 Introduce a delay (ms) 200 Send answer twice	Send function 16 (write) as 3 (read) Send function 3 (read) as 16 (write) Send wrong device address Wrong number of bytes read in frame Wrong hddhMSB when answer to write Wrong hddhMSB when answer to write
0000 Display Ing	Clear

#### XML client

This test tool allows you to test the connection to an XML server either using TCP/ IP or the serial communication mode. You can send standard frames such as "Ping request", "Variable list request", "Recipe list request", "Event list request", "Alarm list request" or any other personalized message.

The communication port must not be opened when performing the test. If you want to test on a serial port that is already open in Crystal, you must first deactivate it from the Device tab.

TCP/TP Client Senal	
17 Address Client Port	
192.158.0.1 502	
Connection time (ms): 0	
Open client Close	
-	
Auto reply to ping	
Care P Roble ko Travent	
induction of the data	
1	

#### • Com port analyzer

Using appropriate cable, the *Com port analyzer* allows you to analyze two serial ports simultaneously.

The tool displays frames that are sent by *Crystal XE* to the device (PORT A) as well as frames that are sent by the device to *Crystal XE* (PORT B) at the same time.



SMTP tool

The *SMTP tool* allows users to directly send an Email to one or several addresses using any mail server and test email delivery.

Send email		
		RIBER SOF
	GMail 🔹	
	smtp.gmail.com	(smtp.domain.com)
	25	(25)
	No TLS Support 💌	(none)
	MyIdent	(identifier)
	****	
	MyEmail@gmail.com	
	MyName	
To Destination ad dest@yahoo. example: btan	ldresses com us@riber.fr ; jlock@riber.f	
	Send	Save Close

#### ISC15 tool

The ISC15 test tool allows you to emulate ISC15 former RIBER shutter controller.



#### EibiSync server emulator

Use *EibiSync server* tool to emulate a device using EI BiSync protocol either using TCP/ IP or serial communication mode.



The communication port must not be opened when performing the test. If you want to test on a serial port that is already open in Crystal, you must first deactivate it from the Device tab.

#### Cluster server emulator

You can use this tool to emulate a cluster server.

🔐 Claster simulation tool			
		RIE	BER SOFT
Connection Simulator Simulator (alarms) MEE	000		
Parameters Looi IP Address Part 392,368,1.184 502 Open societ Active=TRUE Disconnect SocietEms=#ALSE	Error smulition in 1CP header     Send frame transaction to 34     Gend protocol identifies to 45     Send frame long th to 1     Add 2 characters to the frame		
Error simulation in modbus frame			
Do not answer Answer only offer n request 3 Stroduce a delay (me)	Send function 16 (write) as 3 (read) Send function 3 (read) as 16 (write) Send surong device adhesis Wrong number of bytes read in frame Wrong AddHSB when answer to write Wrong NbWordHSB when answer to write		
Ocor Bounts0 Deplay log Depl			
10/02/20 17:01:56-978: Usten			
۹			

#### ASCII Terminal

ASCII tool allows you to send ASCII frames to any serial device and displays the response.



#### Video

Use the Video tool to test video connection and display.

# 6.4.2. UDP Client/Server test

This tool can be used to send broadcast messages over the local area network using the UDP protocol. The received data is displayed in a memo for analysis.



# 6.4.3. AIM IP setup

A assistant to setup the IP address or the new AIM device.



# 6.4.4. Log Viewer

In the history log (at the bottom of the main Crystal XE screen), double-click on any of the events or right-click on it and select Open in a new window to open the Log viewer.

On the menu bar, select *Tools > Log viewer* to access the *Log viewer* window.



The Log viewer displays log details. When you open the Log viewer window, logs are displayed as in the history box (logs that have been cleared in the history box do not appear in the Log viewer).

You can save the logs under a specific name by clicking on the following icon:



You can display any log file by clicking on the file icon **a** and selecting a file to open.

## 6.4.5. CSV viewer

The *CSV viewer* allows you to display data recorded by the system recorder saved as CSV *Files*, represented in table and chart.

The recorded data is displayed in a table. Each row corresponds to a period of time (or a layer) according to the defined trigger mode. Each column corresponds to a property whose values have been recorded.

Open a CSV file by clicking on the Open button located in the top left-help corner of the window:

By default the first line of the CSV file is always displayed (title of the columns). To hide the first line, unselect Anchor the first line:

XE CSV viewer			
Dpen Q	Anchor the first line	Log scale	Double click to Add/remove a column into the chart

You can view one or several properties values on a chart in the lower part of the window. Each property corresponds to a curve on the chart.

To display or hide a curve, double-click on the property column in the table.

When a curve is displayed, the column is highlighted in yellow.

The curves legend appears on the left side of the chart. Double-click on a curve in the legend to hide/display the curve.



By default, the chart has linear scale. Check the Log scale box to use logarithmic scale:

first line 🔽 Log scale Double dick to Add/remove a column into the chart

If you open a record file when the recorder is still recording, only data that has been recorded before opening the CSV viewer will be displayed.

#### 6.4.6. Black box viewer

The *Black box* is the *Crystal XE* background circular recorder. The *Black box viewer* displays files saved by the *Black box*.

The Black box option must be enabled to record files. To enable the Black box go to Setup > Options > General and check the box:

REFER Black box viewer	
File	
Export to CSV	

You may need appropriate user right to perform this action.

#### 6.4.7. Search

Do a string search in Crystal XE.

This functionality is useful if you want to know if a tag is used, in which script and when it is used.

Search	e	
Search in line comments     Search in script files     Search string Manipulator	Number of script checked: 904 Total number of lines: 20930 Search Total Items found: 15	
File C:\riber\_DEMO_C21D2\Recipe\C21D2\My File C:\riber\_DEMO_C21D2\Recipe\C21D2\My	<pre>yFirstScript.pas (line 4) Manipulator.Rotation_basic.Rotation_SP:=4; yFirstScript.pas (line 5) Manipulator.Temperature.RampTypeSP:=1; yFirstScript.pas (line 7) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=2 yFirstScript.pas (line 8) Manipulator.Temperature.RampSt:=RTarget; yFirstScript.pas (line 9) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=2 yFirstScript.pas (line 17) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=2 yFirstScript.pas (line 19) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=2 yFirstScript.pas (line 20) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=2 yFirstScript.pas (line 20) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=2 yFirstScript.pas (line 20) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=2 yFirstScript.pas (line 20) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=2 yFirstScript.pas (line 30) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=1 yFirstScript.pas (line 31) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=1 yFirstScript.pas (line 31) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=1 yFirstScript.pas (line 31) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=1; yFirstScript.pas (line 32) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=3 yFirstScript.pas (line 43) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=3 yFirstScript.pas (line 44) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=1 yFirstScript.pas (line 44) Manipulator.Temperature.RampStypeSP:=Marget;</pre>	
	Clos	se

## 6.4.8. Check all scripts

The script verification tool analyzes all the scripts in the project and indicates if there is an error. This tool does not check files on the disk unless they are used by another script. Only scripts already loaded are checked.

6.5. Editors menu								
File	View	Recine	Tools	Editors	Setun	Window	Help	
T IIC		- neerpe	10015	<u>E</u> dit	a form	×	<u>T</u> ool bar <u>M</u> ain User view <u>C</u> 21DZ.C_CBr4_LTI_P9.Temperature (Detail)	
							T <u>i</u> me lapse	

From this menu, you can switch a form to design mode to modify its content. This is useful when in some cases the right-click context menu for editing the form does not appear.



The setup menu allows to access to the hardware configuration, the options and the users. This is another way to access to the menu located on top right of the application:



# 6.7. Window menu

ХЕ С	XE CRYSTAL XE 64 bitsDEMO_C21DZ - Version 2.03 build 6BETA 4 *********** Simulation mode: com							
File	View	Recipe	Tools	Editors	Setup	Window	Help	
						<u>C</u> 21DZ	.In1_ABI85_P10.Insert (Detail)	
						C <u>2</u> 1DZ	.Ga1_ABN60DF_P8sub1.MV (Measured value)	
						<u>T</u> ime la	ipse	

This menu depends on the number of windows that are open. The name of each window that is opened appears here. By clicking on one of the names, if the window was minimized, it is restored. This is useful for finding a lost window.

# 6.8. Help menu

Help	
<u>O</u> perator manual	
<u>S</u> cripts manual	
<u>C</u> ontact	
<u>V</u> ersions history	
C <u>h</u> eck for updates	
<u>L</u> icense	
<u>A</u> bout	

## 6.8.1. Operator manual

Open the operator manual. This is the online help which is also accessible by the HELP button in each of the equipment.

## 6.8.2. Script manual

This is the online help which is also accessible by the F1 function button in the script editor.

On the Help menu, click on the Scripts manual to display Crystal XE help window that mainly provides information about Crystal XE scripts.

On the tree structure, expand the lists and selected the desired item to display information on the right side of the window.

Expand the Script list and select The Pascal language to find general information about Pascal Language. Click on the items to navigate through the sections:



The functions used in Crystal XE, are listed in a tree structure. When editing scripts, you can refer to the information provided.

Expand Functions reference, then expand the groups and select a function to display the information.



# 6.8.3. Contact

#### Display information on how to contact Riber.



The best way to contact our customer service is to use email.

## 6.8.4. Crystal XE versions

Select *Versions history* to view new features and corrections made to *Crystal XE* since the first version:

Select your version from the drop-down list:



The history displays the modifications that have been made to the selected version.

Check/uncheck the boxes to filter modifications made in Crystal XE: fixed bugs (red), improved features (green), new features (blue) or incompatibilities with older versions (pink):



You can also filter modifications made to a specific feature of the software by entering text in the text box:



Example: viewing recipe related modifications:

XE Versions CRYSTAL XE			
			RIBERSOFT
Display changes since version: 2.01b05: 17/06/2019 ØBugs ØImprovements 39 items found	Filter: Print New features Imcompatibilities		
2.01b05106/03/20191N 2.01b05108/03/20191N 2.01b05119/03/20191B 2.01b05125/03/20191B 2.01b05125/03/20191B 2.01b05127/03/20191B 2.01b05127/03/20191B 2.01b05127/03/20191B 2.01b05101/04/20191N 2.01b05105/04/20191N 2.01b05105/04/20191N 2.01b05112/04/20191N 2.01b05112/04/20191N 2.01b05116/04/20191N 2.01b05116/04/20191N 2.01b05116/04/20191N 2.01b05116/04/20191N 2.01b05118/04/20191N	update pyrometer regulator new rotation pyrometer sub Chart: when editing a form, Video camera object was no Object Animated images: now Users: When activating the Add the debug option: "log Substrate holder: it was no Forms: It is now possible t Function script WriteIniStr New script functions: Lower It is now possible to add c When changing a font of a v Ascii driver: more details New device Advantech ADAM-6 The laver comment is now av III	RCON Modline 7 (improve commu equipment (Axis_pos.sub) and u the title of the chart was no conger working in the 64-bit v it is possible to add individ multi-user mode and when the u socket errors" in the Advanced : possible to change the gain, o rotate an image in the Anima and WriteIniValue: if the sec Case, UpperCase, Trim and file omments to global variables. sual object, the scroll bar o are displayed when a communica 18 to read up to 8 thermocoup milable as a property to be sa	nication script to avoid erro pdate Substrate holder equipr t editable. ersion. ual image in a list and it is ser was automatically logged tab of the Options form. the offset and the update ti ted image object. tion is empty then all the se Exists. f the font color was disabled tion error occurs in a script le and 8 digital outputs. ved to recorder files.
			Close

# 6.8.5. Check for update

This functionality required a Internet connection.



# 7. MAIN TAB

M	Main	🕄 Load	ing 🖻	Degas_cha	amber	C21DZ	Parking	
<b>j</b>	Aut	omation	<b>1</b>	User view		Security		

# 7.1. AUTOMATION



The Automation tab allows you to create, edit and execute production batches.

A batch is used to organize every operation performed by the different parts of the epitaxy system, either in parallel or in sequence. A 'batch file' contains the description of the platens' movements in the system.

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about the creation and execution of batches, please refer to the chapter <u>Platens automation</u> in this manual.



The *User view* interface is a visual representation of the MBE system allowing users to monitor and control the functioning equipment.



The User view interface depends on your configuration.

The *User view* is a form (synoptic view) composed of several objects representing your MBE system: equipment, chambers, shutters (confirmation buttons), etc.

You can customize the *User view* interface using the *Tool palette*: right-click the interface background and select *Edit form* to open the *Tool palette*.

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about the edition of forms, please refer to the chapter **Forms and objects** in this manual.

#### 7.2.1. Example of equipment representation



Representation of the equipment Ga2\_ABI85\_P11 and its three pieces of sub equipment:

Shutter

Insert





The interface allows you to perform the following actions:

Opening/closing shutters following the measured value viewing the set point value following the output power bar graph opening the Detail view window



→ For more details about equipment objects and shutters (confirmation buttons), please refer to the chapter *Forms and objects* in this manual.

# 7.2.2. Interacting with the equipment

## **Opening/closing shutters**



You can open/close a shutter by double-clicking on the desired shutter icon.

Green icon indicates that the shutter is open while red icon indicates that it is closed.

As any confirmation button, when you first click on the shutter icon, a progress bar appears over the icon:



Base

Double-click before the time (represented in yellow) is up. **Opening the Detail view window** 



Click on the following button , from the desired sub equipment's item, to open the *Detail view* window.

A detail view window is associated with each piece of sub equipment. The *Detail view* allows users to control the values of the sub equipment.

Example: Detail view of Insert sub equipment associated with Ga2\_ABI85\_P11 equipment

Ga1_ABN60DF_P8 Tip	Base Shutter
Setpoint     Measure       787.50     787.60       Current TSP     Target SP       787.50     0.00       Off     Step	gs Min SP Max SP 0 1050 Offset 0 Slope 10 °C/min
Regu	alation mode Auto
MANUAL - Power settin	gs (%)
OP OP 5.00 % Current TOP Target OP	Max OP 80 %
0 % 0 %	Slope

The available settings depend on the type of sub equipment.

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about the Detail view, please refer to the section <u>Example of Detail view window</u> from the chapter <u>Chambers</u> > <u>Equipment view</u>.

#### Add in a new chart

Right-click on a parameter's value and select *Follow in a chart* to open the corresponding chart in a pop-up window.



To save this chart, right-click on any part of the chart window, select *File > Save as* and then select the desired file format.



The *Security* tab allows you to enable or disable the <u>system</u> security agents and configure their alarms.

		🚑 System
		CPU_Usage
1. Select a security agent		Memory_Space
	V	🗹 Disk_Space
		🗌 On critical event 📃 🔔
		🗌 On warning or critical event 📃 🔔
		🗌 On all events 📃 🔔
		Agent Action Log
		Agent Action Log Free memory space in MB (recommended=500)
2. Set the alarm		Agent Action Log Free memory space in MB (recommended=500) Low threshold 500
2. Set the alarm		Agent Action Log Free memory space in MB (recommended=500) Low threshold 500 Filter type None
2. Set the alarm		Agent Action Log Free memory space in MB (recommended=500) Low threshold 500 Filter type None Filter 10

Select the desired security agent in the upper panel. You can set the alarm for each selected security agent using the lower panel.

For example, after selecting the *Memory Space* security agent, you can set a 500 MB low threshold value from the *Agent* tab.

An alarm will be activated as soon as the amount of memory available drops under 500 MB.

The Action tab allows you to configure alarm notifications (sound, email, SMS, etc.).

The Log tab is history of the last 50 events related to selected

You can enable/disable security agents by checking/unchecking the box:



→ For more details about the configuration of security agents and alarms, please refer to the chapter <u>Chambers</u> > section <u>Chamber security</u> in this manual.

# 8. CHAMBER TABS

In Crystal, a chamber is a sub system.

For example, a chamber can be a growth chamber, a load/unload, a preparation chamber, a flip/flop etc... each sub system that is connected to a cluster port is called a chamber.



On the right side of the *Main* tab, the chamber tabs allow you to display chamber features. The number of visible chambers depends on your configuration. Click on the desired chamber to display the chamber tabs.

The chambers tab are the following:

XE	CRYS	FAL XE 6	4 bits ·	DEMO_	C21DZ -	- Version 2.	03 buil	d 6BET/	4 ***	*******	* Simula	tion mod	le: communi	cation	disabled ***	*****	****
File	· View	Recipe	Tools	Editors	Setup	Window H	lelp										
á	8	simu			C21	DZ s	YSdemo	,									
1	Main	🗊 Loa	ding 🖻	Degas_c	chamber	🖾 C21D2	z 🗊	Parking	<b>S</b> c	hamber 5							
1	Use	er view		Equipmen	it 💄	Security	2	K R	lecipe		Charts		Recorder	<u>Lh</u>	Statistics		Devices

Depending on the configuration of the chamber concerned, some tabs may not be visible. For example, if no device is defined for this chamber, the device tab will not be displayed.

You can also show or hide each tab. To do this, go in the hardware configuration, click on the chamber, and check the tab that you want to see:



- **Userview**: by default, this tab is not displayed. You can create a special view for this chamber only.

- **Equipment**: display the list of all equipment and a detail view.
- **Security**: the security tab allows you to configure all securities in Crystal, equipment by equipment and sub-equipment by sub-equipment.
- **Recipe:** this tab is used to create and edit recipes, browse the recipe files and execute a recipe.
- Charts: displays the mains data in several charts in function of time.
- **Recorder:** Each of the 3 recorders save data in a separate file. The file format is CSV (text file). The default acquisition period is 2 seconds. It can be modified but cannot be less than one second.
- **Devices:** This view allows to see if there is no communication issues with devices. It is also possible to open an analyzer for each device to help to solve a communication problem.
- **Statistics:** for maintenance purposes, the statistics tab is used to find out how long a cell has been used, how many times a shutter has been used, how many turns a manipulator has performed, etc.

# 8.1. USER VIEW

XE	CRYST	AL XE 64	l bits -	_DEMO_C21	DZ -	Version 2.0	3 build 6	5BETA 4 ****	*****	** Simulat	ion mod	le: communi	cation	disabled **:	*****	****
File	View	Recipe	Tools	Editors Set		Window H	elp									
	8			C2	1	DZ si	'Sdemo									
1	Main	🕄 Load	ing 🖻	Degas_chan	nber	🕄 C21DZ	🕄 Pa	rking 🗊 Cha	amber 5							
1	User	r view	8	Equipment		Security	¥	Recipe		Charts		Recorder	LA.	Statistics		Devices

The userview of a chamber can be used to make a second user view, after the main user view.

- → For more information, see the chapter MAIN TAB / Userview
- $\rightarrow$  You can also see the chapter **Forms and objects** in this manual.

# 8.2. EQUIPMENT VIEW



Main 🐼 Loadin Degas_chamber 🐼 C21DZ	S Parkin	) Charts 🔡 R	ecorder <u>/h</u>	Statistics 🐻 Devices	1 - Select an eo	quipment
As_VAC500_P1 22 Reservoir_Z1 Shutter	<u>→</u>	As_VAC500_P1	Crat Reservor_Z1 Shutter Valve_AVP6504	CMV         787.93         CSP         787.70         Off         TSP         0.00           CMV         285.20         CSP         285.13         Off         TSP         0.00           Closed         OK         OK         OK         OK         OK         OK	Offs 0.00 Offs 0.00	
787.70         787.93         0         1050           Current TSP         Target SP         Offset           787.70         0.00         0	*	P_KPC250_P2	Cracker_Z2 Reservoir_Z1 Shutter Valve_NVC6000	™ 750 53         CSP 750 27         Off         TSP 300.0           ™ V 252.63         CSP 232.53         Off         TSP 0.00           ™         Closed         OK         Off         TOP 0.00	0 0ffs 0.00 0ffs 0.00 % 0ffs 0.00 % INIT	
Off Step v 10 *C/min		Si_ABN135D_P3	Temperature Shutter	MV 1012.77 CSP 1012.50 Off TSP 300.0	D Offs 0.00	➡ ОР 7.00 ТОР
Regulation mode Auto	-	Be_ABN135D_P4	Temperature Shutter	MV 664.12 CSP 663.92 Off TSP 300.0 Closed OK	0 Offs 0.00	
MANUAL - Power settings (%)	*	C_C_cell_P5	Temperature Shutter	MV         1500.10         CSP         1500.07         Off         TSP         0.00           Image: Closed Character of the second control	Offs 0.00	— ОР 8.00 ТОР
● 6.00 % 75 % Current TOP Target OP 0 % 0 %	*	AL_ABN60DF_P6	Tip Base Shutter		Offs 0.00 Offs 0.00	↔ OP <u>6.00</u> TOP → OP <u>8.00</u> TOP
Off Step 0 %/min	<u></u>	N_Plasma_P7	AIM	MV 3.100 V CSP 0.000 V OFF TSP 0.000	V	ор <u>51.00 %</u> тор
Detail view	^	Ga1_ABN60DF_P8	Tip Base Shutter	MV         787.77         CSP         787.73         Off         TSP         0.00           MV         594.05         CSP         693.92         Off         TSP         0.00           MV         694.05         CSP         693.92         Off         TSP         0.00           MV         694.05         CSP         693.92         Off         TSP         0.00	Offs 0.00 Offs 0.00	← OP 5.00 TOP     ← OP 8.00 TOP
Detail view	۹	C_CBr4_LTI_P9	Temperature Shutter	MV 225.53 CSP 225.27 Off TSP 0.00 <sup>™</sup> Closed OK	Offs 0.00	🕂 ОР <mark>5.00</mark> ТОР
Sub equipment	۹	In 1_ABI85_P 10	Insert Base Shutter	I <sup>6</sup> MV         682.83         CSP         682.67         Off         TSP         0.00           I <sup>6</sup> MV         570.03         CSP         570.00         Off         TSP         0.00           I <sup>6</sup> MV         570.03         CSP         570.00         Off         TSP         0.00           I <sup>6</sup> MV         570.03         CSP         570.00         Off         TSP         0.00           I <sup>6</sup> MV         570.03         CSP         570.00         Off         TSP         0.00	Offs 0.00 Offs 0.00	← OP 6.00 TOP     ← OP 7.00 TOP
setup	\$	Ga2_ABI85_P11	Insert Base Shutter	I*         M∨         750.27         CSP         750.10         Off         TSP         310.0           I*         M∨         652.90         CSP         652.70         Off         TSP         210.0           0*         Closed         OK         OK         OK         OK	0 Offs 0.00 0 Offs 0.00	← OP 6.00 TOP     ← OP 7.00 TOP
Setup Inspect	elp 🖌 🛛	Sb_VCor300_P12	Cracker_Z2 Reservoir 71	F6         W2750.43         CSP         750.20         Off         TSP         0.00           F6         W275.42         CSP         275.20         Off         TSP         0.00	Offs 0.00	

Example: C21DZ chamber's Equipment view

The *Equipment* interface displays all equipment in a list view (right) depending on your configuration.

You can directly modify some of the equipment's parameters from the list view (closing/opening shutters, modifying target set point values, etc.).

Click on the desired equipment from the list view to display its associated *Detail view* window (left).

# 8.2.1. Equipment list view

#### **Equipment item**

Each line displays one piece of equipment and all its associated sub equipment. For each piece of sub equipment, you can find its parameters listed horizontally.

*Example:* List view of *As\_VAC500\_P1* equipment and its four pieces of sub equipment (*Cracker, Reservoir, Shutter, Valve*).



Select a piece of equipment to display its corresponding *Detail view*s on the left side of the interface.

# Alarm icon

The alarm icon (bell), located on the left side of each piece of equipment, indicates the state of the equipment alarm:

- Grey bell: all sub equipment alarms are disabled
- Sreen bell: at least one of the sub equipment alarms is enabled
- Red bell: at least one of the sub equipment alarms is activated

Alarms occur (are activated) according to the configuration of their associated security agent.

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about the configuration of security agents and alarms, please refer to the section <u>Chamber</u> <u>security</u> in this chapter.

## Interact with the equipment

From the list view, you can directly modify some of the sub equipment parameters.

Example:

opening /closing shutters



modifying the values

stopping a running ramp

The editable fields and available features depend on the type of sub equipment.

## Customizing the list view

#### • Changing the equipment order

Drag the equipment item up or down to modify the order.

#### Hiding/displaying equipment

Click on the equipment item, hold down the left mouse button and drag it up or down to display the trash icon:



Drag and drop the desired equipment item into the trash icon to hide the equipment.

You can display all hidden equipment by right-clicking on any part of the interface and selecting *View all hidden equipment*.

To display only specific equipment, right-click on any part of the interface, move the cursor over *Show specific* equipment and select the equipment to be displayed. The equipment reappears at its previous order.

## 8.2.2. Equipment setup

Some sub equipment parameters, such as maximum and minimum set point values, are not directly editable.

CRYSTAL XE 64 bitsDEMO_C21DZ - Version 2.03 build 5	************** Not reg	jistred: communicati	on disabled ************	
File View Recipe Tools Editors Setup Window Help				
C21 DZ SYSdemo				RIBER SOFT 🗱
👧 Main 🗟 Loading 🗟 Degas_chamber 🗟 C21DZ 🗟 Pa	arking 🖏 Chamber 5		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
🧠 Equipment 🚊 Security 👗 Recipe 🖉	Charts 🔡 I	Recorder []] Sta	atistics 🔜 Devices	
P_KPC250_P2 Cracker_Z2 Reservoir_Z1 Shutter V. ( )	As_VAC500_P1	Cracker_Z2 Reservoir Z1	MV 787.87 CSP 787.63	Off TSP 100.00 Of A
AUTO - Controller settings		Shutter Valve_AVP6504	Closed OK	
750.17         [750.43]         [1000]           Current TSP         Target SP         Offset	P_KPC250_P2	Cracker_Z2 Reservoir_Z1	MV 750.43 CSP 750.17	Off TSP 123.00 Of
750.17 123.00 0 Slope		Shutter Valve_NVC6000	Pos 0.00	Off TOP 0.00 % Of
Off Linear 10 °C/min	Si_ABN135D_P3	Temperature Shutter	MV 1012.80 CSP 1012.70	0 Off TSP 300.00 Of
Regulation mode Auto	Be_ABN135D_P4	Temperature Shutter	MV 663.92 CSP 663.92	Off TSP 300.00 Of
MANUAL - Power settings (%)	C_C_cell_P5	Temperature Shutter	MV 1500.23 CSP 1500.20	Off TSP 0.00 Of
OP OP Max OP	Al_ABN60DF_P6	Tip	MV 270.20 CSP 0.00	Off TSP 0.00 Of
Setup button of the		Base Shutter	MV 307.67 CSP 0.00	Off TSP 0.00 Of
selected sub equipment	Ga1_ABN60DF_P8	Тір	MV 787.93 CSP 787.70	Off TSP 0.00 Of
		Base	MV 693.98 CSP 693.92	Off TSP 0.00 Of
	C_CBr4_LTI_P9	Temperature	1° MV 225.30 CSP 225.27	
		Shutter	Closed OK	
	In1_ABI85_P10	Insert -	MV 682.93 CSP 682.70	Off TSP 0.00 Of
		Base Shutter	MV 570.27 CSP 570.07	Off TSP 0.00 Of
	Ga2_ABI85_P11	Insert	MV 750.47 CSP 750.20	Off TSP 310.00 Of
		Base	MV 652.57 CSP 652.57	Off TSP 210.00 Of
		Shutter	Closed OK	
	Sb_VCor300_P12	Reservoir Z1	MV 750.30 CSP 750.23	Off TSP 0.00 Of
Setup Irspect Help	•			

To configure the sub equipment setup values:

- Select the equipment in the list view
- Select the sub equipment in the Detail view:

Click on the Setup button Setup, located in the bottom left-hand corner of the window, to open the Setup pop-up window:

Modify the setup parameters:

Setup As_VAC500_P1 [Cracker_Z2]								
OP and SetPoint Limits Min SP Max SP 0 °C 1050 °C Min OP Max OP 0 % 75 %	Max slope SP 1000 °C/min Max slope OP 100 %/min							
Regulation parameters         P       I       D         0       %       0       %         CB low       CB high       0       °C         0       °C       0       °C	Auto tunning Limits Min OP Max OP 0 % 0 % Auto tune							
Ramp parameters Disable step in AUTO Disable step in MANUAL	Ramp refresh rate OP SP 1.0 ₅ 1.0 ₅							
Close								

The setup parameters depend on the sub equipment type.

The appropriate user right (Setup equipment) is needed to access that window.

# 8.2.3. Example of Detail view window (temperature)

The *Detail view* window displays the parameters of sub equipment and allows users to follow and edit their values (when editable).

Users need the appropriate user right (Control equipment) to edit the sub equipment values.

Each type of sub equipment displays a specific *Detail view* window.

Click on the desired equipment in the list view to display the Detail view.

Example:

*Detail view* of *Ga1\_ABN60DF\_P8* equipment with its three associated pieces of sub equipment (broken into three tabs):

Tip Base Shutter

Snutter

Click on the sub equipment tab to display the parameters.

Ga1_ABN60DF_P8 Tip	Base	Shutter	
AUTO - Controller set Setpoint Measure 787.73 787.90 Current TSP Target SP 787.73 0.00 Off Step	tings Min S 0	SP Ma 1050 0 0 5 10	ix SP ) ffset lope *C/min
Re	gulation m	node 🛛 A	iuto
MANUAL - Power set	tings (%) ] ]	Ma: 80	x OP %
Off Step	]	Sk V	ope %/min

#### Automatic mode and manual mode

As for some types of equipment, you can switch the regulation mode from Automatic to *Manual* by double-clicking on the *Regulation mode* button:



Stop the linear ramp ([Off]) before switching the regulation mode.

The Automatic mode allows you to specify a target set point value (°C) to be reached. Click on the Target SP field to type the desired value.

CAUTO - Controller settings									
Setpoint	Measure	Min SP	Max SP						
100.00	100.17	0	1050						
Current TSP	Target SP		Offset						
100.00	100.00		0						
			Slope						
Off	Step	-	10 °C/min						
Regulation mode Auto									
	Ado								

The Manual mode allows you to specify a constant power set point (%) to reach the required temperature. Click on the Target OP field to type desired value.

	Regulation mode	Manual
MANUAL - Power	settings (%)	
OP OP 50.00 Current TOP Target 50 % 50	8 0P %	Max OP 80 %
		Slope
Off Step	<b></b>	0 %/min

#### Step and linear ramp



**Step**: select Step from the drop-down list to directly set a target set point value (in Automatic mode) or a target output power value (in Manual mode).

**Linear ramp**: select linear from the drop-down menu to modify the temperature by programming a rise using a linear ramp until reaching the target set point value (in Automatic mode) or the target output power value (in Manual mode):

- set the ramp slope
- select 'Linear' from the drop-down list
- set a target value



The ramp activity button is turned on (green) when a linear ramp is running



To stop a running linear ramp, turn off the ramp activity button **on** by double-clicking on it. When you first click on the button, a progress bar appears **on**. Click again before the time (yellow) is up).

Other ramp proFiles can be defined from the Options window. (Setup > Options).

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about ramp profiles, please refer to the chapter Setup > sections Options > <u>General options</u> in this manual.

#### Add in a new chart

Right-click on a parameter's value and select *Follow in a chart* to open the corresponding chart in a pop-up window.



To save this chart, right-click on any part of the chart window, select *File > Save as* and then select the desired file format.

# 8.2.4. Sub equipment inspector

The sub equipment inspector is a pop-up window that lists all the sub equipment parameters and their current values in a table. The values can be followed in real time:



Example: inspector of Tip sub equipment associated with AI\_ABN60F\_P6 equipment

To open the inspector pop-up window: select the equipment in the list view select the sub equipment in the Detail view

AI_ABN60DF_F	P6 Tip	Base	Shutt	er	
AUTO - C Setpoint	ontroller set Measure 270.17	tings Mir 700	n SP	Ma 106	ax SP
Current TSP 0.00 Off	Target SP 0.00 Step	]	-	0 0 10	ffset ilope °C/min
	Re	gulation	ı mode	-	Auto

click on the Inspect button, located in the bottom left-hand corner of the window, to open the inspector pop-up window:



# 8.3. CHAMBER SECURITY

<b>N</b>	lain 🕄 Loadi	ng 菌	Degas_chan	nber	C21DZ	🕄 Parki	ng				
-	Equipment		Security	¥	Recipe	8	Charts	Recorder	<u>Uh</u>	Statistics	 Devices

The alarms management interface allows you to:

configure security agents for each type of sub equipment,

set an alarm for each security agent,

choose the action to be performed when the alarm is activated.

If one of the chamber's alarms is activated, a red bell icon will appear over the chamber's tab and the *Security* tab alarm icon will turn red as follows:

<b>N</b>	lain 式 Loadin	ig 🗐	Degas_char	nber	🖾 C21DZ	🕄 Parki	ng				
4	Equipr		Security	¥	Recipe	8	Charts	Recorder	<u>Uh</u>	Statistics	 Devices

Bell icons indicate the state of the alarm as follows:

- Grey bell: the alarm is disabled
- Sreen bell: the alarm is enabled

Red bell: the alarm is activated (has occurred)

The security interface is divided into three parts as follows:

- the equipment view (right),
- the tree view (center),
- the security agents management panel (left).



Security agents panel

Tree view

Securities equipment view

# 8.3.1. Securities equipment view

The securities equipment view displays all the functioning equipment, depending on your configuration.

Click on the desired equipment to highlight the equipment line in the tree view and manage its security agents on the left side of the interface.

The bell icon indicates the state of the equipment's alarm (enabled, activated or disabled). The equipment alarm is activated if at least one of its security agents' alarms has occurred (security alarms of its sub equipment).

<pre>As_VAC500_P1</pre>	as_VAC500_P1
•	9

The following circle icon indicates that the equipment alarm has occurred. The digit indicates the number of times the alarm of the equipment occurred.

For example, the following icon indicates that the equipment's alarm occurred four times, whether or not an alarm is still occurring.

Click on this icon to acknowledge the activation of the alarms. Once all alarms have been acknowledged, the icon will turn green  $\bigcirc$ .

Nou cannot acknowledge an alarm if this alarm is still activated.

# 8.3.2. Tree view

All the equipment and sub equipment alarms are displayed in a tree view as follows:

Equipment > sub equipment > security agents

*Example*: tree structure of the *Si\_ABN135D\_P3* equipment



*Si\_ABN135D\_P3* equipment associated with two pieces of sub equipment: Temperature Shutter

Temperature sub equipment associated with four security agents: Communication fault Minimum and maximum temperature Out of range Minimum and maximum power

In the tree structure, double-click (or click on the + / - icons) to expand/collapse a list. You can choose to expand only the security agents whose alarms are disabled by clicking on the Expand disabled only tab:

a Expand disabled only

You can also choose to expand the equipment level alarms only to have a quick view on the alarms' state, by clicking on the *Expand* alarms only tab:



### **Enabling/Disabling alarms**



In the tree structure, right-click on the desired security agent and select *Enable* to enable the alarm (green icon)

Right-click and select *Disable* to disable the alarm (grey icon)

You can disable or enable alarms at the security agent level or at the sub equipment level in the tree structure.

Nou cannot disable alarm at the equipment level.

## 8.3.3. Alarm levels



Example: tree structure of the Si\_ABN135D\_P3 equipment

The alarms can be activated, enabled or disabled at three different levels: **Equipment level**: you cannot enable/disable alarm at the equipment level. The equipment alarm will occur (be activated) if one of its sub equipment alarm is activated. **Sub equipment level**: you can enable/disable alarms at the sub equipment level. When the sub equipment alarm is disable, all its security agents' alarms are disabled as well. The sub equipment alarm will be activated is at least one of its security agent alarm is activated. **Security agent level**: you can enable/disable alarm alarms at the security agent level. If the alarm at the sub equipment level has been disabled, you must enable it prior to enable an alarm at the security agent level. The security agent alarm occurs according to its configuration (threshold values).

# 8.3.4. Configuring the security agents

Select a piece of equipment whether on the equipment view or on the tree view to display its security agents in the security management panel (on the left side of the interface).

You can configure security agents for each piece of sub equipment that are divided into different tabs.

Select the sub equipment	
$\overline{1}$	
🔔 Equipment 🔔 Temperature 💄 Shutter	
Communication fault	Soloot the
Min/Max Temperature	security agent
🕑 Out of range (MV/SP)	
🕑 Min/Max power 🛛 🔔	
Agent Action Log	
Temperature in degree C	
4 Min 0 Max 1500	
🔺 Filter type By allowed time (sec) 💌 🚺 Se	t the alarm
Filter 5	
Current value : 664.18335	

## Enabling/disabling alarms

## Sub equipment level

The *Equipment* tab displays all the pieces of sub equipment associated with the selected equipment:



Example: Si\_ABN135D\_P3 equipment

To enable/disable a sub equipment alarm, check/uncheck the corresponding box. When you disable a sub equipment alarm, all its security agents' alarms are disabled as well.

#### Security agent level

Select a piece of sub equipment from the available tabs to display the sub equipment's security agents.

In the following example, the Temperature sub equipment is associated with four security agents:

- Communication fault
- Minimum and maximum temperature
- Out of range
- Minimum and maximum power



To enable/disable a security agent alarm, check/uncheck the security agent box.

The sub equipment level alarm must be enabled to allow you to enable its different security agents' alarms.
# Settings alarms

From the sub equipment tab, select the desired security agent to display its setting in the lower part of the panel:



The available settings depend on the type of the selected security agent.

## Agent

The Agent tab allows you to set threshold values and configure the activation of the alarm.



Moving average filter

The moving average is more relevant for values other than binary ones, so for example for a shutter it's of limited interest, but for a temperature or a pressure value it's more appropriate.

The calculation is as follows:

NewValue = ((PreviousValue\*FilterValue)+CurrentMeasuredValue) / (1+FilterValue)

The focus is on testing the result of the calculation, rather than the measured value. This smoothes the curve to avoid triggering the alarm on a measurement peak. The larger the filter, the more effective the smoothing, but the longer the alarm triggering time.

#### By allowed time

In this mode, the filter value represents a time in seconds. The measured value must exceed the threshold throughout the set time. This is called hysteresis.

For example, after selecting *Min/Max Temperature* security agent, you can specify minimum and maximum temperature values:



In this example, if the temperature value falls below 500°C or exceeds 1500°C continuously for 5 seconds (filter), the alarm will be activated.

## Action

On the Action tab, check Enabled to display the available actions divided into different tabs:

Agent	Action	Log				
🕑 Ena	abled				Tes	t
Recipe	/ batch	Sound	Output	Email	s∢	

You can define actions to be performed whenever the alarm is activated using these different tabs.

### **Recipe and batch**

From the drop-down list, select the action to be applied to the **recipe** when the alarm occurs:

Agent	Action	Log				
🗹 Ena	bled				Tes	st
Recipe	/batch	Sound	Output	Email	5 4	
Reci	pe action				-	
Nor	ie					
Pau Sto Sto	ise recipe p recipe p and lau p and lau	ch defaul ch specifi	t security ed securit	recipe y recipe		

Security recipe

The **default recipe** and countdown can be specified for the chamber by clicking on the *Setup* menu > *Options* > *Chambers*:



Define the security recipe priority from the drop-down list:

Priority
1 : Low priority 🔷 👻
1 : Low priority
2 : Lower normal
3 : Normal
4 : Higher normal
5 : Higher priority

For the security recipe to be executed, the priority level of the security recipe must be higher than the executing recipe. If the priority level of the security recipe is equivalent of lower than the recipe running within the chamber, the security recipe will not execute.

#### Batches

From the drop-down list, select the action to be applied to the batches when the alarm occurs:

Batch action :	
None	-
None	
Pause batch Stop batch	

Batches can either be stopped or paused when the alarm is activated.

#### Sound

When the alarm is activated, you can be notified by a sound. Select the desired option from the drop-down list:



The default alarm sound can be defined from the *Options* menu (**WAV format only**):

Go to Setup > Options > General



Select Specific alarm sound to select a sound file (WAV format only)

Sound action	
Specific alarm sound	-
Sound file	
alarm1.way	

Select the repeat option from the drop-down list:



### Output



On the *Output* tab, you can set values to be assigned automatically to the defined property if the alarm occurs.

Select a property from the Data explorer by clicking on the following icon: Enter the values to be assigned when the alarm is activated and/or when the alarm terminates:



#### **Email and SMS**

If the alarm occurs, you can be notified an Email and/or SMS alert.

Email and SMS notifications must be enabled to configure these options. To enable notifications, go to Set up > Options and then Emails or SMS tabs.

Enable the Email and SMS notifications by checking the box on the corresponding tab:



After enabling notifications from the *Options*, if the checkbox is not active, please select another security agent and then select again the security agent to activate the modification.

You can type a customized message into the text box:



#### Appropriate user right is needed to perform the above actions (Options).

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about the Options please refer to the chapter Setup > section <u>Options</u> in this manual.

#### Script

On the *Script* tab, you can specify scripts to be executed when the alarm is activated (*OnStart* event) and/or when the alarm terminates (*OnStop* event).

Agent	Action	Log			
🗹 Ena	bled				Test
Sound	Outpu	t Email	SMS	Script	<b>4</b> →
Event	s	Sc	ript		
OnSta	art(handl	e:integ			
OnSto	p(handle	e:intege			

Select the event in the table and click on the following icon we to edit the script using Pascal editor.

## Testing the actions

Click on the *Test* button test, located in the top right-hand corner of the box, to test all actions that have been set simultaneously:



Testing actions allows you to verify the execution of scripts, the delivery of Email or SMS, the sound, etc. before the activation of the alarm.

### Log

The Log tab displays all alarm related events.



The events are saved automatically as '.txt' files to the Log folder, in your project directory.

You can open your project directory by clicking on the *File* menu (menu bar) and selecting *Browse project directory*.



The *Recipes* tab, allows users to create, edit or execute recipes. It also allows you to browse all the recipe files and display an overview.



In *Crystal XE*, recipes are made of a succession of layers. In these layers, every set point stays frozen for a time duration predefined for this specific layer.

All the actions defined for a layer are executed at the beginning of the layer's timer (temperature, opening the shutter, opening valve, etc.).

The ramp duration can be defined over the layer's duration or can be customized.

 $\Rightarrow$  For more details, refer to the **RECIPE EDITORS** section later in this manual.

(1) Also, the annex **Recipes by example** introduces you to the creation of new recipes step by step.

# 8.4.1. Creating a new recipe

You can edit a new recipe using either:

• the recipe editor (graphical interface),

or

• the script editor (Pascal language).

#### **Recipe editor**

The graphical editor is the simplest and fastest method to write a recipe. On the other hand, these functionalities are more limited although the possibilities are endless.



### **Script editor**

Scripts require programming knowledge.



The saved recipe files can be accessed from the *Recipe* folder, in your project directory. *To open your project directory, clicking on the File menu and select Browse project directory.* 

⇒ For details on how to write a recipe, see the "RECIPE EDITOR" section later in this manual.

# 8.4.2. Editing an existing recipe

Click on Open/Edit Solution open/Edit to edit a recipe file.

You can also open the recipe file by clicking on the following file icon



Once the recipe is loaded, click on the pencil icon to open the recipe editor.



You can edit either *'.pas'* files (edited with the script editor) or *'.rcp'* files (edited with the main recipe editor).



Clicking on the following icon allows you to clear the file name input field but it <u>does not</u> delete the recipe file.

## 8.4.3. Executing a recipe

You can supervise and control the execution of the recipe using the Recipe inspector:

Recipe name
HEMT active layers.rcp 🖉 Offset Var 🧮 🗙
Run 🖸 Stop 🔢 Pause 💽 Skip layer
- Current layer
0001  2020/02/11 16:27:14,970  AlGaAs spacer
Number : 1 Remaining time: 00:00:30 Layer time: 00:00:34 Pause time:
Overall status
Start time: 11/02/2020 16:27:14 Elapsed time : 00:00:05 Total pause time:
End time: 11/02/2020 16:30:29 Recipe remaining time: 00:03:09
Layer  Date / Time   Description
2020/02/11 16:27:14,965  Starting recipe "HEMT active layers.rcp" with pr:
0001  2020/02/11 16:27:14,970  AlGaAs spacer

Click on the following icon in the Recipe name field and select the desired recipe file. Click on the Run button is and select "Run now" to start running now or "Run at" to choose the date and time for starting the recipe.

Overview of the dialog box for choosing when to start the recipe:

Will start	in: 23 hour 5	7 min 42	sec
Date	12/02/2020	•	Start time preselection
Time	16:33:21	•	Cancel

When the recipe is running, the Run button **Provided Run** is greyed.

Click on Skip layer Skip layer to abort the ongoing layer and continue the execution of the next one.

If the following box is checked, the *Data recorder* will start recording as soon as the recipe starts executing and will stop when the recipe terminates.

Start / Stop system recorder with recipe

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about the system recorder, please refer to the chapter Chamber > section <u>**Recorder**</u> in this chapter.

You can open the recipe inspector in a separate window by clicking on the *Detach* button, located on in the top right-hand corner of the inspector. Close the pop-up window to attach it back.

### Script debug tool

You can monitor the execution of the recipe by clicking on the following icon and open the *Script debug tool.* 

The script of the recipe is displayed in a pop-up window:



By default the layer that is currently executing is highlighted and you can follow the execution of the script.

• On the *Display* menu, if you uncheck *Display active line*, the executing layer will not be highlighted:



Select Status bar to display information about the executing source and compiled code at the bottom of the window:



Displaying the number of the executing source line and byte code (compiled code) position

Select Variables to display the list of global variables declared in the script (that can be referred to throughout the script). Variables declared within a procedure (local variables) are not displayed.



The variables are listed in a drop-down menu on the left side of the window.

*	Rtar	get: REAL	-	😳 Add Var	🔂 Add All
	Rtar i: IN	get: REAL F32			
	1	Rtarget	0		
	2		0		

Add the variables to the table below to display their values.

Select a variable from the drop-down list and click on *Add var* **G** Add Var to add a specific variable only.

Click on Add All C Add All to add all variable at once to the table.

Rtar	get: REAL	)	-	•	Add V	ar	🔁 Add All
	Var	Value					
	Rtarget	0					
2		0					

You can close or open the *Script debug* window at anytime before, during or after the recipe execution.

# 8.5. CHARTS

👧 м	lain 🗊 Load	ling 🖻	🚺 Degas_cha	mber	S C21DZ	🕄 Parki	ing				
-	Equipment		Security	Å	Recipe		Charts	Recorder	Uh.	Statistics	 Devices

The *Charts* tab allows users to easily follow the chamber data using chart view. Charts are generated automatically depending on the equipment and sub equipment that have been set within the chamber.





# 8.5.1. General

## Starting/Stopping charts

### Starting all charts

 Use the buttons located in the top left hand corner of the interface to start or stop all charts:

Click on Run **Run** to start the charts.

When all charts are running the button is turned grey

Click on Stop **Stop** to stop running charts.

When all charts are stopped, the button is turned grey

The chamber's charts can start automatically at the launch of the program.

On the menu bar, select *Setup > Options > Startup* and then select *Started* from the dropdown list:



<u>/</u>

Appropriate user right might be needed to perform the above action (*Options*).

 $\rightarrow$  For further information, please refer to the chapter Setup > section <u>Options</u> in this manual. Starting one chart

### To start a specific chart only, right-click the chart background and select Acquiring Data:

çãZoom limit	
<u>S</u> cales	
<u> L</u> eft button	
S <u>h</u> ow / hide	
<u>D</u> isplay	
Colo <u>r</u> s	
<u>A</u> cquiring data	
✓ Smart optimization	
🥐 Insert a label	
🔟 Delete the point	
<u>F</u> ile	
Copy to clipboard	
Pri <u>n</u> t	
<u>C</u> lear all	
<u>V</u> iew data	
De <u>t</u> ach	

When the chart is acquiring data, the following icon appears:

#### Acquiring data

Unselect Acquiring data to stop the data acquisition:

<u>A</u>cquiring data

Or click on the Stop button **Stop** to stop all charts.

### **Clearing charts**

To clear all charts' data, click on the *Clear all* button, located on the left side of your interface:

Clear all

To clear only one specific chart, right-click the chart background and select *Clear all*. All data of the chart is cleared.

## **Displaying charts**

Seven different charts can be displayed for a chamber, regardless of you project configuration. The chart's data is represented by curves on the chart depending on the equipment and sub equipment set within the chamber.

Charts	Examples of sub equipment (growth chamber)	Examples of data (growth chamber)
Temperature set point (SP)	Temperature	Measured value (MV)
	<ul> <li>Cracker</li> </ul>	Current set point
	<ul> <li>Reservoir</li> </ul>	(CSP)
Temperature output power	<ul> <li>Temperature</li> </ul>	Output power (OP)
	<ul> <li>Cracker</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Reservoir</li> </ul>	
Shutters	Shutter	State (1:on, 0:off)
Pressure	Pressure	Measured value (MV)
Valve position	Valve	Output power (OP)
		Target output power (tOP)
Flow	Mass flow controller (MFC)	Flow of gases
Others	<ul> <li>AIM</li> </ul>	Measured value (MV)
	<ul> <li>Pyrometer</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Cryopump</li> </ul>	

Example: C21DZ (growth chamber):

For a given chamber, some charts may have no data to display. With the demonstration project, for example, on the Parking chamber, only the Pressure chart has data to acquire and display.

Click on a chart, from the pane located on the left side of the interface, to display/hide a chart. Displayed chart are highlighted :



## Saving charts

Charts are not saved automatically onto your hard disk.

To save a chart, right-click the chart background and select *File > Save As* and then select the desired file format: CXE, CHR, CSV (text) or BMP (image *File*).

Zoom limit Zoom predefined Scales Show / hide 2 Colors	•							
Acquiring data • Smart optimization (Insert a label Delete the point								
	Þ	<u>O</u> pen	•					
Cogy to clipboard P <u>r</u> int Cl <u>e</u> ar all <u>V</u> iew data		<u>S</u> ave as	ľ	Save to CXE file (new binary file) Save to CHR file (old text format) Export to CSV (compatible Excel but limited) Export to image file				
De <u>t</u> ach								

- CXE : is the latest chart format. This file format is the fastest.
- CHR: is kept only for reasons of compatibility with older versions.
- CSV: can be read by Excel but some information are lost.
- BMP: is an image file (bitmap).

# Zooming in or out on chart

## Zoom limit

Right-click a chart background to display the pop-up menu.

Select *Zoom limit* to automatically zoom in or out in order to display all data plotted on all curves from the beginning of the acquisition:

#### ST Zoom limit

You can also double-click on a chart to perform a zoom limit.

### Left mouse button option

You can modify the option of the left mouse button. Right-click a chart background, select Left button and then select the desired option:

Ş∛Zoom limit			8	
Z <u>o</u> om predefined				
<u>S</u> cales				
Left button	Þ	Q Zoom b	)ox	Ĩ
S <u>h</u> ow / hide	٠	+ <u>M</u> ove th	he chart	

• Zoom box (default): focus on a specific part of the chart.

Click outside the points you want to focus on (zoom in), hold down the left mouse button and create a rectangle selection outside these points:



• Move the chart: display point information and maximize

Move the mouse over a curve point. A link (straight line) appears between the point and the cursor. Hold down the left mouse button and drag the cursor to pull the link. Then release the mouse to maximize and move over the chart. The more you pull the more it is maximized.



### Mouse wheel

When the mouse cursor is moving over a graph, scroll the mouse wheel to zoom in or out.

Since all charts are using the same X scale (time), zooming in or out automatically affects all the charts.

# 8.5.2. Curves and data acquisition

The data acquired by the chamber's charts, depends on the equipment and sub equipment set within that chamber.

The acquired data is plotted by points on the chart and linked by lines (curves). You can also choose to hide points or lines (refer to the part <u>*Curve display*</u> in this section).

## Displaying/hiding curves

The data acquired by each chart is represented by curves that are listed in the chart legend, located on the right side of the chart:



Example: *Pressure chart's curves (growth chamber)* 

You can hide/display a curve by directly clicking on it in the legend:



The hidden curves appear in gray and are marked by a strikethrough line.

For each chart, you can hide/display all curves by right-clicking on the chart legend and selecting the corresponding item:



If your window is not maximized and/or if many charts are displayed, all curves may not appear in the chart legend (off-screen). To display the full legend list, unselect all the other charts and/or maximize the window.

You can also display the chart legend in a pop-up window and view all curves.

Right-click the chart background, select *Show/ hide* and then select *Curves* to open the pop-up window:





Using the pop-up window, display/hide curves by checking/unchecking a curve box. To hide or show all curves using the following buttons:



(1) Hiding curves do not stop the data acquisition. If you save the chart to CSV or CHR file, hidden curve's data will be saved as well.

# **Display options (Show / Hide)**

Right-click a chart background and move the mouse over *Show / Hide* to open the drop-down and select the desired option:

\$ Zoom limit Zoom predefined Scales Scales Scales	Þ					
S <u>h</u> ow / hide	۲	<u>C</u> urves				
<u>C</u> olors		✓ Information balloon				
<ul> <li>✓ <u>A</u>cquiring data</li> <li>✓ S<u>m</u>art optimization</li> </ul>		Labels <u>Grid</u> Legend <u>Dots and lines</u> <u>Dots only</u> Lines only <u>Polygon</u>				
Insert a label Insert a label						
 <u>F</u> ile Copy to clipboard P <u>r</u> int	Þ					
Cl <u>e</u> ar all <u>V</u> iew data		Y axis Type				
De <u>t</u> ach		and an an and and and				

By default the acquired data is plotted by points linked by lines (line charts). You can choose to display both points and lines (default) or only dots or lines.



You can also show/hide dots by checking/unchecking the box in the panel located on the left side of your interface:



Select Polygon to display a filled polygon:



Polygon

Move the mouse other Y axis type and then select an item from the drop-down menu to define a linear (default) or logarithmic scale:



A logarithmic scale is a nonlinear scale usually used with large range of values.

# **Deleting points**

You may need to delete a point (data) that has been plotted on a curve.

To delete a point, mouse the mouse over the point on the chart, right-click and select *Delete the point*:



You can also delete a point from the data view window (refer to the next part).

### Viewing data and statistics

Right click a chart background and select *View Data* to open the pop-up window:

XE View data		
As_VAC500_P1.Cracker_Z2.MV (4899 -	Data	Statistics
As_VAC500_P1.Reservoir_Z1.MV (48)	400	X Y Delete points
As_VAC500_P1.Reservoir_21.CSP (4)	100	15/07/19 12:23:30,65 787.733 15/07/19 12:23:31,67 787.833 <u>C</u> olor
P_KPC250_P2.Cracker_Z2.CSP (4)	102 103	15/07/19 12:23:32,69 787.667 15/07/19 12:23:33.70 787.733 (*) : Visibles points
P_KPC250_P2.Reservoir_Z1.CSP (4) Si ABN135D_P3 Temperature MV (491	104	15/07/19 12:23:34,71 787.833
Si_ABN135D_P3.Temperature.CSP (4)	105	15/07/19 12:23:36,74 787.733
Be_ABN135D_14.Temperature.CSP (4)	107 108	15/07/19 12:23:37,75 787.833 15/07/19 12:23:38,76 787.8
C_C_C_Cell_P5. Temperature.mv (4007) *		
		Uk Cancel

Example: Data view window of the Valve position chart (growth chamber)

First, on the left side of the window, select one or several curves from the list:



On the *Data* tab, points (data) of the selected curve(s) are displayed in a table (X and Y values for each point).

If *Smart optimization* option is enabled, the curve may not display all points (having the same value). To disable *Smart optimization*, right-click the chart background and then unselect *Smart optimization*. For further information, please refer to the part <u>Smart optimization</u> in this section.

To delete a point, select the point line in the table, and then click on Delete points:

xe View data					
As_VAC500_P1.Cracker_Z2.MV (4890)	Data	Statistics			
As_VAC500_P1.Ctacker_22.CSP (4) As_VAC500_P1.Reservoir_Z1.MV (4886) As_VAC500_P1.Reservoir_Z1.CSP (4) P_KPC250_P2.Cracker_Z2.MV (4877) P_KPC250_P2.Cracker_Z2.CSP (4) P_KPC250_P2.Reservoir_Z1.MV (4900) P_KPC250_P2.Reservoir_Z1.CSP (4) Si_ABN135D_P3.Temperature.MV (4907) Si_ABN135D_P3.Temperature.CSP (4) Be_ABN135D_P4.Temperature.CSP (4) Be_ABN135D_P4.Temperature.CSP (4) C_C_Codl DF_Temperature.CSP (4)	100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108	X 15/07/19 12:23:30,65 15/07/19 12:23:31,67 15/07/19 12:23:32,69 15/07/19 12:23:33,70 15/07/19 12:23:33,70 15/07/19 12:23:35,73 15/07/19 12:23:36,74 15/07/19 12:23:37,75 15/07/19 12:23:38,76	Y 787.733 787.667 787.733 787.833 787.833 787.733 787.833 787.833 787.833		Delete points Color (*) : Visibles poin
				Ok	Cancel

You can modify the color of the selected curve (highlighted in the curves list). Click on the Color button and then adjust the curve color:

• You can calculate statistics for the selected curve(s) on the Statistics tab:



# Select range

Select Entire curve to display statistics based on all points.



Select Part of curve to define a range of points using the spinner.



# Results

Click on Calcu	ulate now	Calculate now	to display statistics of the sele	ected curve(s).
2) Results	<u>X axis</u> N/A	<u>Y axis</u> N/A		
<u>Minimum value :</u> <u>Maximum value :</u>	N/A N/A	N/A N/A	Calculate now	
<u>Maximum qap :</u>	N/A	N/A		

# Data acquisition options

Modify the data acquisition options using the panel located on the left side of your interface:



The acquisition time is the frequency at which a point (data) is plotted on charts. By default, for each curve, a point is plotted every second. You can adjust the acquisition time using the spinner:



Once they are started, charts acquire data over defined time duration. You can adjust this duration using scrollbar button:



The information bellow indicates memory size the duration would require and the number of points that can be plotted over the duration (depending on the defined acquisition time and whether or not *Smart optimization* option is enabled).

### **Smart optimization**

When *Smart optimization* is selected, when three consecutive points having the same value are plotted on a curve, the second point is deleted automatically.

Smart optimization option is enabled by default for all charts:

#### ✓ Smart optimization

To disable *Smart optimization* for a chart, right-click the chart background and unselect it:



Example: acquisition time set at 1 second



Corresponding data view

# 8.5.3. Chart options

## Information balloon

By default when you move the cursor over a point, a link (straight line) appears between the point and the cursor and point information is displayed in a tooltip (information balloon):



To hide the tooltip on a chart, right-click the chart background, select *Show/hide* and then unselect Information balloon from the drop-down menu:



You can hide/display the information balloon on all charts by checking/unchecking Show X/Y in the panel located on the left side of the interface:

Show dots
🖉 Auto scale
Show balloon
Show Legend

# **Displaying/hiding legend**

By default a legend is displayed on the left side of all charts:



To hide a chart legend, right-click the chart background, select *Show/hide* and then unselect *Legend* from the drop-down menu:



To hide/display the legend of all charts, uncheck/check the box in the panel located on the left side of the interface:



# Displaying/hiding the grid

By default the grid chart is displayed in the background.

To hide the grid, right-click a chart background, select *Show/ hide* and then unselect *Grid* from the drop-down list:

ξζ <u>Z</u> oom limit						
Z <u>o</u> om predefined						
<u>S</u> cales						
<u> Left</u> button						
S <u>h</u> ow / hide	•	<u>C</u> urves				
<u>C</u> olors		✓ Information balloon				
✓ Acquiring data		✓ <u>L</u> abels				
✓ Smart optimization		<u>G</u> rid				
		✓ L <u>eg</u> end				
Delete the neint		✓ Dots and lines				
		Dots only				
<u>F</u> ile	- *	Lines only				
Co <u>p</u> y to clipboard		Debuser				
P <u>r</u> int		Polygon				
Cl <u>e</u> ar all		<u>v</u> axis iype				
<u>V</u> iew data						
De <u>t</u> ach						

# Detach the chart

Right-click a chart background and select *Detach* to detach the chart from the main interface and open it in a separate window:



Close the window (click on the cross) to attach it back to the main interface.

# Scales ranges and Auto scale

Right-click on a chart and select *Scales* from the drop-down menu to open the scales pop-up window:



By default *Auto scale* option is enabled for all charts and the last points of the running curves are always displayed automatically. Each time a curve reaches the end of a chart window the X axis is recalculated. Uncheck the box to disable *Auto scale* option.

Since all charts share the same X axis, if *Auto scale* is enabled for at least one of the charts that are displayed, the X axis will still be recalculated.

You can disable the *Auto Scale* option for all charts by unchecking the box in the panel located on the left side of your interface:



You can set the ranges of minimum and maximum values for each axis. First disable the *Auto scale* option (uncheck it):



Then enter the desired value in the corresponding boxes:



## Labels

To add a label to a point, move the mouse other the desired point, right-click and select Insert a label:



### Give the label a name:



#### The label appears over the point:



To hide the chart labels, right-click on the chart, select *Show/hide* and then unselect *Labels* from the drop-down menu:



() All the chart labels are hidden.

To delete a label, move the mouse over the labeled point, right-click and select *Modify a label*. Then clear the field and leave it empty as follows:



### **Chart options panel**

The following box, located on the left side of the interface, allows you to quickly modify some options for all charts:



Check/uncheck a box to enable/disable the corresponding option:

- Show dots: displaying the chart points
- Auto scale: recalculating automatically the X axis when a curve reaches the end of a chart window.
- Show X/Y: showing information balloon over a point
- Show Legend: showing the chart legend

8.6.	R	EC	OF	RD	ER			-					
	👧 Ma	ain 🛐	Load	ding (	🗊 Degas_cha	mber	S C21DZ	🕄 Parki	ing				
	4	Equipm	nent		Security	¥	Recipe		Charts	Recorder	LA.	Statistics	 Devices

The system recorder allows you to save the main data onto the hard disk (default). You can also create your own recorder template and specify the data you want to record.

📄 New 🛛 📂 Open/Edit 🔅 Add		
Default recorder  Record Stop Recording  General Column list		
Template : Default	Record number: 5 File number: 1	
Record\2019-07-15_14-41-26_C21DZ.csv           Start time:         15/07/2019         14:41:26           File size:         26         276         bytes		<b>1</b>
Trigger mode Time 2 Sec Recipe layers		

Recorder window

# 8.6.1. Recording data

Click on the Record button to start recording data.



A grey *Record* button indicates that the system is currently recording.



Checking the following box, located at the bottom of the *Recipe* inspector (*Recipe* tab) enables the recorder to start automatically as soon as a recipe starts executing within the chamber:

Start / Stop system recorder with recipe

The recorder stops when the recipe terminates.

The recorded data is saved automatically as '.csv' file (text format) located in:

#### Project directory > Record

The file names indicate the date, time and chamber within which data has been recorded. If the maximum number of lines in the file is reached, the data will be saved to a new date and stamped file.

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about the recorder options, please refer to the section chapter Setup > section <u>Options</u> in this manual.

Click on the CSV icon . to copy the file onto your hard disk under a specific name. You can save the data during or after recording.

You can view the recorder data at any time by clicking on the spreadsheet icon **E**. The recorded data is displayed in your spreadsheet program.

You can also view the CSV file using *Crystal XE CSV viewer*. On the menu bar, select *Tools* > *CSV viewer* to open the pop-up window.

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about the CSV viewer, please refer to chapter General > <u>Menu bar features</u> in this chapter.

In the CSV file, each line (record) corresponds to either a period of time or a layer. Select the desired parameter in the *Trigger mode* box:



- **Time**: by default a new record (line) is added every two seconds. Adjust the duration using the spinner.
- **Recipe layers**: a new record (line) is added each time a new layer is executed.

The current number of records (lines) and the number of created files are indicated in the recorder window:



# 8.6.2. Recorder templates

On the Template drop-down menu, you can select either:

default template

or

custom template



The default template records all the main data (depending on the equipment set within the chamber) while a custom template allows you to choose only specific data to be recorded.

Custom template is recommended in order to reduce the size of the generated file. Custom templates are saved as '*.rec*' file located in your project directory as follows:

*Project directory > Record > Templates* 

You can also click on the file icon also click on the file icon open the template directory. **Opening a custom record template** 

To open a custom template, select *Custom* from the drop-down list:



Then click on the file icon *is* to select a custom template file:



Four different recorders can be running simultaneously. To add a recorder (custom template), click on *Add* and select a template file:



## Creating a custom template

The custom template must be created before recording.

Click on *New* to open the *Record editor* pop-up window and create a new customized template:



Custom template editor

Give the template a title. The title only appears in the recorder window.

Title My Custom Template

#### File name options:

By default the file name is date and time stamped as follows:

'year-month-day\_chamber.csv'

You can uncheck the following box so that the date and time do not appear in the file name (not recommended).

Insert date/time in the file name

You can customize the default name using the following text box:

Output file name MyTemplate

The output file name will be added to the default file name as follows:

'year-month-day\_chamber\_MyTemplate.csv'

#### Recorded data:

Click on Add 😳 Add to open the Data explorer and select data to be recorded:



To select properties, double-click on it or click on Add in record - Add in record. The properties are listed in the following box:

As_VAC500_P1.Cracker_Z2.MV
As_VAC500_P1.Cracker_Z2.TOP
As_VAC500_P1.Cracker_Z2.OP
As_VAC500_P1.Cracker_Z2.TSP
As VAC500 P1.Cracker Z2.CSP

Each property corresponds to a column in the CSV file.

You can modify the order of the recorded properties (columns) using the Up and Down buttons:



Click on delete to remove a property:

Check the box to add a column with layer number:

#### Add a column for the layer number

Use the following box to define the trigger mode by default each time you open the custom recorder:



The trigger mode can be modified later, from the recorder window.

#### Storage mode:



By default, all values are saved to the CSV file.

To optimize the file size, modify the option so that only data expressing a change in value is recorded. In this case, if the value of a property does not change from one line (record) to another, the cell is not filled until.

To edit an existing custom template file, click on Open/Edit to select the template file you want to edit.



If the template has been opened, you can also click on the pencil icon

If the custom recorder is recording, you can only modify the template using the Open/edit button. The modified file will open automatically the next time the recorder starts recording.

# 8.7. DEVICES


The *Devices* tab is a visual representation of the chamber electronic devices that can communicate with *Crystal XE* and allows you to easily detect a communication or a connection problem.

The connections between the communication ports and the regulators are represented by a wire.

The displayed devices depend on you project configuration. With the demonstration project, the *Devices* tab is only available for the growth chamber (*C21DZ*).

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about the devices configuration, please refer to the chapter <u>Hardware configuration</u>.

If the connection has failed, the following alert icon will appear over the device icon as follows:



The absence of icon indicates that the connection has succeeded. Right-click on a device to display the available options:



- Analyser: analyzing the connection to the device
- **Setup**: configuring the device (Setup)
- **Disable/Enable**: enabling/disabling the device.

When the device is disabled, the following icon appears over the device:



In simulation mode, all devices are disabled by default.

() Appropriate user rights are needed to perform the above actions.

## 8.8. STATISTICS

	YSTAL XE 64 bits - XI	E52_FR_ALMAE	_5Y514930_R1	00 - Version 2	2.03 build 6B	ETA 4 ****	*****	** Simulatio	on mode	e: commun	ication disabled *	******	****	
File	View Recipe Tools	Editors Setup	Window Help											
. 🦉	SIMU	R10	) ALMAE-SY	514930									RIBER	ѕоғт 🛱
1 M	1ain 🖾 Growth 🗟	Prep 🕄 FEL2	FEL1											
	Equipment 🔔	Security	Recipe	🖄 Char	ts 🔡	Recorder	<u>líh</u>	Statistics		Devices				
-	Equipment	Sub equipment	Tag	Warning level	Reset date	Value			-	_	_			
1	In1 THERMOCELL P1	Con Construction	HeatingDuration	0	30/12/1899	1m 20d								
2		shutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	445								
3	Ga1_ABI500_P2		HeatingDuration	0	30/12/1899	1m 20d								
4		shutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	414								
5	Al1_S100_DZ_P3		HeatingDuration	0	30/12/1899	1m 20d								
6		shutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	365								
7	In2_ABI500_P4		HeatingDuration	0	30/12/1899	1m 20d								
8		shutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	413								
9	Be_S63_P5		HeatingDuration	0	30/12/1899	1m 20d								
10		shutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	414								
11	In3_THERMOCELL_P6		HeatingDuration	0	30/12/1899	1m 20d								
12		shutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	422								
13	Ga2_ABI500_P7		HeatingDuration	0	30/12/1899	1m 20d								
14		shutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	415								
15	Al2_S100_DZ_P8		HeatingDuration	0	30/12/1899	1m 20d								
16		shutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	361								
17	Si_S63_P9		HeatingDuration	0	30/12/1899	1m 20d								
18		shutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	412								
19	In4_ABI500_P10		HeatingDuration	0	30/12/1899	1m 20d								
20		shutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	57								
21	AsH3PH3_Inj_P11	shutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	1								
22	Cluster 1	Control	MovingCounter	0	30/12/1899	0								
23	Manipulator		HeatingDuration	0	30/12/1899	<1h								
24		Shutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	1								
25		Rotation	counter	0	30/12/1899	0								
26		PyroShutter	counter	0	30/12/1899	1								
All ev	ents Criticals and war	nings Communic	ation User even	ts										
20	20/02/20 15:30:08: (799	9) Growth: PSSI Ir	nterlock activated	Ion pump									Popup window on a	
20	20/02/20 15:30:08: (799 20/02/20 15:30:08: (799	9) Growth: PSSI In 9) Growth: PSSI In	nterlock activated	Press 2 Press 1									Never	
20	20/02/20 15:30:08: (003	3) The project wa	s loaded in 3844 m	IS		140								
20	20/02/20 15:30:05: (003	<ol><li>Loading project</li></ol>	c: \riber_app\XE5	2_FR_ALMAE_S	YS14930_R10	0\								

The statistics view is for maintenance purposes. The statistics tab is used to find out how long a cell has been used, how many times a shutter has been used, how many turns a manipulator has performed, etc.

It is possible to reset theses counters by double click on it. This action required a password.

# 9. HARDWARE CONFIGURATION

Click on the following icon in the top right-hand corner of the main interface and

click on the Hardware configuration button

Hardware configuration

You can also click on the Setup menu and then the Hardware configuration submenu to open the Project configuration window.



KE Hardware configuration		
File Templates Tools		
Main     Global variables     Simulation mode     Global variables     Global variables     Simulation mode     Global variables     Simulation mode     Global variables     Gl	Description Project title C21 D2 - Project created 9/11/2014 10:44:59 AM Project description Modifications PGe pour version de démo avec exemples de scripts et recettes      General information Creation date : 9/11/2014 10:44:59 AM Creation version : .100 build 10 Update date : 01/02/2019 12:05:21	
	Update version : 2.01 build 4 Beta1	
	Restore default data when dosing Ok Cance	

Example of project configuration

The Project configuration window enables you to configure the chambers, equipment and devices of the project.

You cannot modify the hardware configuration when a recipe is running.

All modifications of configuration are saved to the file 'config.xfg' (XML file) located in the root of the project directory.

Navigate through the window panels using the tree structure on the left side of the window:



## 9.1. Restoring default setup values

Restore default data when closing

Checking the following box, located at the bottom of the window, restores the default setup <u>values</u> of sub equipment such as minimum and maximum set points, input range, etc.

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about equipment setup values, please refer to the corresponding chapter <u>Chambers</u> > section Equipment view this manual.

## 9.2. Main item

## 9.2.1. Project information

When *Crystal XE* is executed for the first time, the program asks if you want to load the demonstration project. The demonstration project (*DEMO\_C21 DZ*) is already pre-configured with several chambers, devices and equipment.

In *Crystal XE*, the project corresponds to the directory located by default in: D:\ riber\<your project>

If you need to modify the name of the project directory, you must exit *Crystal XE* first and then rename it.

You can type the title and the description of your project in the corresponding boxes:



The title and description of your project is only for information purpose and do not affect the project.



General information about the project and software version

## 9.2.2. Global variables

A variable is a storage location that contains value. The stored value can be accessed using the variable name (identifier). Each variable can store a defined type of data.

A **global variable** is a variable that is accessible throughout *Crystal XE* program.



Click on the Add Var button to **create a new variable** (You must click on the Var item to enable this button)

Give the variable a **name**:



- A **variable** name cannot start with a number and must start with a letter or the underscore character ('\_').
- Variable names can only contain alpha-numeric characters (numbers or letters) and underscore characters.
- The name cannot contain white spaces (blanks).
- Variable names are not case sensitive.
- Different variables must have different names.

Created variables are listed in the *Data explorer* as follows:

App > Var > MyVariable

⊟–<mark>``</mark> App Ġ–<mark>``</mark> Var ⊢® MyVariable

Throughout the program, you can access a variable using the following **full path identifier**: **App.Var.MyVariable** 

The path to access any variable is indicated in the top left-hand corner of the Data explorer:

App.Var.MyVariable

Enter a comment:

You are free to enter a text giving information on the variable.

Select the type of data the variable can store from the drop-down list:

Туре	REAL	
Array size	BYTE CHAR	
Value at startup	WORD BOOLEAN INTEGER INT32 INT64 REAL STRING	irtup

Each variable is assigned a data type that determines the possible values it can store:

**BYTE**: positive number between 0 and 255 (8 bits)

CHAR: a single character

WORD: positive number between 0 and 65535 (16 bits)

BOOLEAN: 0 or 1 (false or true)

**INTEGER**: negative and positive integers (16 bits)

**INT32**: negative and positive integers (32 bits)

INT64: negative and positive integers (64 bits)

**REAL**: 15 significant digits between 1E-308 and 1E+308

STRING: strings of text (words and sentences)

#### • Array size

You can create a variable dimension array.



In that case the use of the variable is different. You must specify the index of the array such as: MyVariable[12] := 345;

An array of variables can only be used in a script, not in a property of a visual object such as an indicator.

Save value and load at startup

Check the following box to save the last value stored in the variable when exiting Crystal XE and load it at the launch of the program:

Save value and load at startup

The data is stored in the data.dat file into the project directory.

If the box is unchecked, the last value is not saved when exiting *Crystal XE* and the variable will store the default value at start-up.

Assign a **default value** to the variable at the launch of the program:

Value at startup 123

If you do not assign any value to the variable, the default value will be 0.

You can create **folders** to organize your variables: click on Add Folder Add Folder (or rightclick the tree structure background and select Add Folder) and give the folder a name:

Folder name			
Enter a name for this folder	MyFolder		
		ОК	Cancel

If a variable is located in a folder, the variable full path identifier will change accordingly: *App.Var.MyFolder.MyVariable* 

Move a variable to a folder using drag and drop.



To add a new variable to a folder, select the folder in the tree structure and click on the Add Var button (or right-click on it and select Add var).

You can modify the list order using the Up and Down buttons. The list order will be the same as in the Data explorer:



You can **rename** a variable by:

- clicking on the *Rename* button,
- right-clicking and selecting *Rename*,
- pressing F2 key.

Renaming a variable may cause errors if the variable name has been already used in scripts or forms throughout the program.

The name of the variable is used to access the value it contains.

## 9.2.3. Simulation mode

Check/uncheck the following box to switch from *Connected mode* to *Simulation mode*, and conversely:



In simulation mode, all communications with peripheral devices are disabled and some values are simulated.

ASCII servers, modbus servers, cloud and data logger remain functional.

KE Hardware configuration				
File Templates Tools				
Main G Global variables Simulation mode B Architecture G Solution Degas_chamber G Solution Degas_chamber G Solution Degas_chamber G Solution Degas_chamber G Solution Degas C 21D2 G Solution	Chambers 1: Loading 2: Degas_chamber 3: C2IDZ 4: Parking Automation Transportation type Platens position Transportation First on bottom Text alarm file TypeCluster2.ini	-       Add         ↓ Up       Down         □ Rename       M         M Remove       M	Chamber palette	

## 9.3.1. Chambers

We call chamber, a subsystem that can receive one or more platens through the programmable logic controller (PLC)

All chambers added to your system are listed in the following box:

1: Loading 2: Degas_chamber 3: C21DZ 4: Parking	Image: Add         Image: Down         Image: Rename         Image: Remove
--	--

In the demonstration project, four chambers are added to the system by default: Loading, Degas, growth (C21DZ) and Parking chambers. Each default chamber is equipped with a set of preconfigured equipment and devices.



Renaming a chamber may cause errors if the chamber name has already been used in one or several scripts or forms throughout the program.

To add a new chamber, click on the Add button 4 and enter the chamber name:

Add chamber			$\otimes$
Enter a name for this chamber	MyChamber		
		ОК	Cancel

You can also right-click on *Architecture* or on one of the chambers in the tree structure and select *Add new chamber*.

The new chamber added to your system is empty and no equipment and devices are set by default.

Use the *Up* and *Down* buttons to modify the chamber order:



The list order corresponds to the order of: the chamber tabs on your interface,

🔊 Loading 🗊 Degas\_chamber 🕄 C21DZ 🗊 Parking

the chambers representation during batches (Automation tab),

Loading	Degas_chamber	C21DZ	Parking
			-
			-

The list in the Data explorer:

XE Data ex	plorer	
File		
Q		
Properties	Functions	
( <b>⊕</b> − <b>○</b> ) Loa (⊕− <b>○</b> ) Deg (⊕− <b>○</b> ) C21 (⊕− <b>○</b> ) Parl	ding gas_chamber 1DZ king	

IMPORTANT: for Pick and place type transfer machines, the following order must be observed:

- 1) Load1
- 2) Prep
- 3) Growth

4) Load2

## 9.3.2. Automation

#### Transportation type:

If your MBE system is equipped with a transfer PLC (Cluster or MBE8000, MBE49 or 6000), you must define which transfer system is used by selecting it from the drop-down list:

Automation ———		
Transportation type	Cluster 🔽 🔽	
	None	
Platens position	Cluster	
in a second provident	MBE8000	
Text alarm file	MBE49,6000	•

#### Platens position:

The position of the platens can be "First down" or "First up". This information is only used in user views when graphically displaying the position of the plantens.

Loading	
-	1
4 (Idle)	
3 (Idle)	
2 (Idle)	
1 (Idle)	

Example of view

#### Text alarm file:

Depending on the type of controller, you must specify which file contains information about the text message that is displayed in the history log when an alarm has occurred. This file contains a correspondence between the alarm numbers which is sent by the PLC and the text of the alarm. These files are provided in the template\PLC sub directory of the program directory (by default in c:\riber\crystalxe\template\PLC). The extension of these files is .INI

#### 9.3.3. Chamber palette

The *Chamber palette*, located on the right side of the window, is a library of chambers preconfigured with a set of equipment and devices. By default you can find one preconfigured chamber: *C21\_dz* (growth chamber).



Preconfigured chambers correspond to XML files with '*.xfg*' extension, located in your program directory as follows:

*Program directory > Template > Chamber > C21\_DZ.xfg* 

The files can also be accessed by clicking on the file icon  $\square$ . If a new file has been added to the template folder, click on the following icon to refresh the list:  $\square$ .

## 9.4. Configuring chambers

## 9.4.1. Parameters

Select the desired chamber in the tree structure to display its parameters

XE Hardware configuration		
File Templates Tools		
C → Main → G Global variables S Simulation mode → B Architecture → S Loading	Chamber Parameters Chamber Name C21DZ Chamber description Growth chamber	
Equipment	UserView       Equipment       Security       Recipe       Charts       Recorder       Devices       Statistics	
Chamber 5	This recipe is executed always before to run a recipe Pre-recipe This recipe is executed always when the main recipe is terminated Post-recipe	×
	Parameters used for platen automation     Number of platens     Chamber type     0: Process (MBE)     This recipe is executed before the platen to be placed in the chamber     Recipe file name	×
	Restore default data when dosing Ok	Cancel

#### Chamber name:

Renaming a chamber may cause errors if the chamber name has already been used in one or several scripts or forms throughout the program.

#### Chamber description:

This is a commentary that explains what this chamber is. You are free to enter the text you want.

#### Visible pages:

The chamber **visible pages** correspond to the chamber tabs on your interface. Check/uncheck the corresponding boxes to hide/display a tab:



By default the *UserView* does not appear in the chamber tabs. Check *UserView* to add a *User view* (form) to the chamber. The new *User view* is empty by default.



→ For more details about forms, please refer to the chapter *Forms and objects* in this manual.

## 9.4.2. Recipes

A **pre-recipe** is a recipe that is executed before the main recipe. You can specify a pre-recipe to be systematically executed prior to any recipe executed within the chamber.

The **post-recipe** will systematically be executed at the end of any recipe executed within the chamber.



Click on the *File* icon *icon* to select a recipe *File*.

To clear a field and define no pre or post recipe, click on the following button:

## 9.4.3. Platens used for platen automation

The following box only appears if your system is equipped with transportation PLC.



#### Number of platens:

Set the maximum number of platens that can be loaded into the chamber:



Chamber type:



The type of chamber will only impact the edition of batches:

**Process** (MBE): a batch cannot start or end with a process chamber (such as growth chamber). In batch mode, at least one recipe must be specified with a process chamber. **No process**: a batch must start with a no process chamber (such as loading or parking chambers). Recipe cannot be executed within a no process chamber.

**Swap**: a swap chamber allows you to swap platens that need to be dropped to the same chamber.

If needed, you can modify the above properties from the batch editor (Editor options).

You can specify a recipe to be systematically executed before a platen is placed within the chamber.



## 9.5. Configuring devices

Select *Devices* in the tree structure to configure the chamber devices:



In *Crystal XE*, a device corresponds to a template file with *'.rgr'* extension, located in your program directory as follows:

```
Program directory > Template > Regulator > 'device.rgr'
```

In this folder, you can also find image files which are used to graphically represent the templates.

You can also click on the file icon to access the File:

If you need to modify any of the device files, create the same directory path in your project directory as follows:

Project directory > Template > Regulator > 'device.rgr'

If you modify files located in the program directory directly, you may lose your modifications if *Crystal XE* is updated. *Crystal XE* will use the template *File* located in the project directory first.

If you need to create a new device based on an existing template, the file name must be different (advanced users).

## 9.5.1. Devices views

The device configuration interface is divided into three views (tabs): Graphic view Tree view List view

The **graphic view** allows you to add devices (communication ports and regulators) to the chamber, connect regulators to communication ports and configure the devices.



The **tree view** displays the ports and sockets and all devices connected to them. For each device, expand the list to display all the device's channels. For each channel, the sub equipment connected to it, if any, is displayed on the left (next to the arrow: - ->).



The **list view** lists all the chamber's devices (in alphabetical order) and allows you to configure, rename or remove them. The list view also allows you to select all devices at once.

Graphical view	Tree view	List view	
Acmv2			
Adam_6066_1			
AIM Avector 1			
Avp6504_1			
Bandit single			
Cluster			
COMx (RS232:9	600.None.8	.1)	
COMx1 (RS232:	38400,None	,8,1)	
COMx2 (RS232:	9600,None,	8,1)	
Elflow 1			
Lakeshore211			
Microion_356002	2		
Modbus_1			
Nvc6000			
PSSI			
Reg1			
Reg2			
Rego			
Socket ACM (10	2 168 0 97	N.	
SOCKET ADAM	(192 168 0	82)	
SOCKET Bandit	(192, 168, 0.	1)	
Socket PSSI (19	2.168.0.79	)	
Socket_REG1 (1	92.168.0.50	j)	
Socket_REG2 (1	92.168.0.5	i)	
Socket_REG3 (1	92.168.0.52	2)	
Socket_REG4 (1	92.168.0.53	3)	
Socket_TCPIP_2	2 (192.168.0	. 123)	
Socket_TCPIP_3	3 (192. 168.0	.90)	
Socket_TCPIP_	5 (192.168.0	1.83)	
Socket_TCPIP_7	(192.168.0	0.111)	
Socket_lelemet	ry (192,168	.0.78)	
Telemeury			

## 9.5.2. Device palette

The *Device palette*, located on the right side of the window, is the library of available devices. The *Device palette* is divided into two filters: category and file name.



Devices by category

Ву	category By file name	
Pro	ogram library	
:	Acmv1	
:0:	Acmv1_c12	
:0:	Acmv2	
:0:	Adam_6018	
:0:	Adam_6066	
:0:	Adam_6217	
:0:	Adam_6224	
:	Agilent_tv304	
:0:	Aim	-
:0:	Aim_rfm	
:0:	Analog	
:0:	Arduino	
:0:	Asco_pneudistrib	
:0:	Avp504	
:0:	Avp6504	
:0:	Bandit_single	
:0:	Cluster	

Devices by file name

#### Search field:

Start by typing the device name to find all the devices containing the letters you enter.



Example with "Acm"

The search is not case sensitive.

How to add a device to the current configuration: First drag and drop the serial port or socket to the graphic view.

Since the anchor allowing you to create a link is located on the right side, it is recommended to place communication ports on the left side of the graphic view:

Socket_TCPIP_1 192.168.0.1 (502)	E [ COMMUNICA	TION PORTS ]
<b>*</b>	Socket_TCPIP	Socket Model
	COM1	Detected serial port
R5232	COM2	Detected serial port
COMx:9600, None, 8, 1	COMx	Serial port model

## 9.5.3. Configuring communication ports

Right-click on the serial port or socket and select Edit or double-click on it.

#### Socket

Basic Advanced PC IP Predefined          Name       Socket_ACM         IP address       192.168.0.97         TCP Port       502
Name     Socket_ACM       IP address     192.168.0.97       TCP Port     502
IP address 192.168.0.97 TCP Port 502
TCP Port 502
Assian a predefined configuration
(192.168.0.xxx)
<b>▼</b>
<u>O</u> k Cancel

Determine the IP address and the port of Crystal XE computer:



You can also select a predefined configuration from the drop-down list:



### Serial port

Com po	rt setup				8
Basic	Advanced	Predefined			
Cor RS	n type 232 🔻	(For information	ı only)		
Cor	n port	Baud rate	Parity	Data size Stop	bit
	<u>9M3</u> -	9600 🔻	None 🔻	8 🕶 1	•
Ass	ign a predifi	ned configuratio	n T		
Regulat	or identifier	: 102C	<u>O</u> k	Cancel	

Select the port type from the drop-down list (does not affect the configuration):



The communication type is only text and has not effect on the operation of the system.

Select a communication port and configure the port:

Com port		Baud rate		Parity		Data	i size	Stop	bit
COM3	-	9600	-	None	•	8	-	1	-

The same configuration will be needed with all connected devices.

## 9.5.4. Preconfigured devices

The demonstration project provides a library of preconfigured regulators divided into several categories. Each device uses either Modbus or ASCII protocol.

- Shutter controller	Category of devices
ACMv1	
ACMv1_C12	
ACMv2	LIDrary or preconfigured devices
ISC12	
ISC15	

Drag and drop the device onto the graphic view. It is recommended to place the object at the top right of the port connected to it.

#### Example:



You can connect several devices to one serial port (for RS485 or RS422):



#### To remove a device:

To remove a device, right-click on it and select Delete.

## 9.5.5. Device models (Protocols)

If the device you want to configure is not provided by the library, you can create a new device by adding one of the two device models, depending on the protocol it uses (Modbus or ASCII):

#### Example with the Modbus protocol:



The red rectangle indicates that the module is not in the program template directory and will not be updated with the next release of Crystal XE.

### 9.5.6. Connecting devices to communication ports

To connect a device to a serial port or socket, move the mouse over the white anchor point until a cross cursor appears:



Then drag the cursor between the port and the device in order to create a link.



To delete a link, right-click one of the two anchors and select *Remove this link*. If several devices are connected to a port, you must create each link one after the other:



When several links are created, right-click on the anchor of the port to delete all links at once.

## 9.5.7. Device settings

Right-click on the device and select *Edit* or double-click on it to configure the device:



Modbus device

ASCII device

#### Determine the device ID:



The device ID identifies the device on the bus.

Modifying the offset address (Available for Modbus device only) will shift all addresses in the Modbus table. It is recommended to keep it at 0 (default).

Offset address 0

## 9.6. Configuring equipment

Select *Equipment* in the tree structure to configure the chamber equipment:





Crystal XE provides a library of preconfigured equipment and sub equipment.

Equipment corresponds to template files, with '*.equ*' extension, located in your program directory as follows:

*Program directory > Template > Equipment > 'equipment.equ'* 

Each equipment is composed of one or several sub equipment. Sub equipment corresponds to template files, with *'.sub'* extension, located as follows:

Program directory > Template > Equipment > SubEquipment > 'subequipment.sub'

## 9.6.1. Equipment palette

The *Equipment palette*, located on the left side of the window, is a library of equipment provided by *Crystal XE*. The *Equipment palette* is divided into three tabs:

filter by category,

filter by File name (in alphabetical order),

sub equipment (for reference only).

Equipment palette 🛛 📆 🛙	
By category By file name S	ub eqi 🔹 🕨
ρ	
+ I_0	
<ul> <li>Temperature</li> </ul>	Category of equipment
BakeOut	
Pyrometer	Equipment Library
Temperature_8	
+ Demo	
+ Automation	
+ Pumping	
+ Cells	
+ Cbe	
+ Monitors	
+ Substrate_holder	
+ Pssi	
+ Process	
+ Rheed	

Equipment by category

Equipment by file name

Click on the *File* icon 🖾 gives you access to the template files directory.

If a new equipment file has been added, click on the following icon 5 to refresh the list.

The equipment editor sub equipment editor allow you to create new equipment and sub equipment files (advanced users).

## 9.6.2. Adding equipment 🧠

Drag and drop equipment from the Equipment palette to the yellow box:



The added equipment appears in a tree structure as follows:

Category of equipment > equipment > sub equipment



Give a name to the new equipment. The name must respect the name convention (no special characters, no spaces, must not start with a number)

After equipment has been added, you can also add more equipment to a **category** (group) by right-clicking on a category or equipment and selecting Add equipment from *File*.



When you first add a piece of equipment, it is allocated a number, so that you can add several same pieces of equipment:

Example:



Same equipment cannot be assigned the same name within the same chamber. The name of the equipment identifies it throughout the program. However same equipment from different chambers can have the same name, the chamber being used when identifying the equipment:

Example:

Degas\_chamber.Cluster

Loading.Cluster

To **rename** equipment, right-click on it and select Rename or select it and press the F2 key.

Renaming equipment may cause errors if the equipment name has been used in one or several script or in forms throughout the program.

To **delete equipment**, right-click on it and select Remove or press the [Delete] key.

Select the equipment to display its information:



#### Equipment template file

Click on the link to modify the equipment.

Modifying an equipment template will affect all equipment.

Define the **color** associated with the equipment. Click on the color box to change the color:

[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all 	<<<< Drag and drop equipments from the palette <<<<<
EffusionCell1	Information Equipment template file : <u>Effusioncell_singlefilament.equ</u> Equipment identifier : 1001
	Color used in charts

That color will be used in graphics with the equipment curve.

The color option only appears if at least one piece of sub equipment has been configured (= linked to a device channel).

## 9.6.3. Group of equipment (folders) 🛷

Equipment is automatically divided into groups (folders), displayed in the tree structure:



The groups correspond to the equipment categories in the *Equipment palette*.

To **rename** a group, right-click on it and select Rename. Renaming groups does not affect their equipment and sub equipment. Even you rename one of the default groups, when adding

equipment from the Equipment palette, the default group will be also added in the tree structure.

To **remove** a group, right-click on it and select Delete. Removing a group removes all the group pieces of equipment and sub equipment.

You can **add** new groups by right-clicking the tree structure background and selecting New folder.



#### Give the group (folder) a name:



To add equipment to the group, right-click on it and select Add equipment from file.



You can copy and paste a folder and its set of equipment and sub equipment either within the chamber or to another chamber. If you copy same pieces of equipment to the same chamber, a different number will be assigned to them.

## 9.6.4. Configuring sub equipment

The equipment is added with a defined set of compatible sub equipment.

Click on the sub equipment in the tree structure to configure it:



A window appears allowing you to link to a device and a channel.

If the link is already made, this window will not appear below but in the central part of the screen.

Link the sub equipment to a device (regulator) by selecting it from the drop-down list:



The list displays all devices that are compatible with the sub equipment, within and without the chamber. When a device is set within a different chamber, the name of the chamber appears before the device name. Several pieces of sub equipment can be connected to the same device through its different channels.

-🈻 temperature Connection type : PIDRea Device / Regulator Channel PIDReg1 C21DZ.E2500\_temperature1 . PIDReg1 Hidden in system view PIDReg: PIDReg3 PIDReg4 PIDReg5 PIDReg6 PIDReg7 a PIDReg8

Select the desired regulator channel from the drop-down list:

The list display available channels only. In the above example, channels 1 to 3 are already used. For each channel, only one piece of sub equipment can be connected.

Information about the sub equipment can be found in the following box:



#### Color used in charts

Define the **color** associated with the sub equipment. Click on the color box to adjust the color. That color will be used in charts with the sub equipment curve.

To **rename** sub equipment, right-click on it and select Rename.



Renaming equipment may cause errors if the equipment name has been used in one or several script or in forms throughout the program.

To identify sub equipment, the names of its associated equipment and chamber are used as well.

*Example:* C21DZ.Wafer\_temperature. Pyrometer

If the name of its associated chamber or equipment is modified, it modifies the identifier of the sub equipment.

#### End of hardware configuration

Once all the modifications to the hardware configuration have been completed, click on the OK button.

#### Configuration file:

The last configuration is saved in the config.xfg file which is in the project folder. It is possible to go back to the last 10 modifications. Older configuration files are saved in the backup subdirectory of the project directory. From the hardware configuration editor it is possible to revert to a previous configuration. To do this, click on the button located in the toolbar.

XE Hardware configuration			•
File Templates Tools			
C.			
25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config1] 25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config2] 25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config3] 25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config6] 25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config6] 25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config6] 25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config9] 25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config1] 01/02/2019 14:29:00 [config1] 25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config1] 25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config1] 25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config1] 25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config1] 25/10/2019 14:29:00 [config1] 29/10/2019 12:05:21 [config1] 29/10/2019 12:05:21 [config13] 29/10/2019 18:19:07 [config14] 29/10/2019 18:19:07 [config15] 05/11/2019 12:27:26 [config16] 07/01/2020 13:49:38 [config19] 10/02/2020 13:49:49 [config20]	I <u>F1Colapse al</u> s_VACS00_P1 JSPC250_P2 C_ARN1350_P3 e_ARN1350_P3 e_ARN1350_P3 i_ARN600F_P6 L_Plasma_P7 al_ARN600F_P6 CGr4_LTL_P9 n1_A8185_P10 al_ARN600F_P8 CGr4_LTL_P9 n1_A8185_P11 b_VCor300_P12 S_P121 e rowth uffer oad rowth_duster rate_holder fenpulator erature akeOut Vafer_temperature vystem_control mation Cluster SI PSS11 v	<<<< Drag and drop equipments from the palette <<<<	Equipment palette By category By file name Sub eq 4 • • I_o • I_o • Demo • Automation • Pumping • Cells • Gauge • Cbe • Monitors • Substrate_holder • Pssi • Process • Rheed
		Restore default da	ta when dosing Ok Cancel

Click on a choice and view the content directly in the editor. You can repeat the operation several times. The modification will not be taken into account until you click on the OK button.

## **10. OPTIONS**

KE CRYSTAL XE 64 bits - D	EMO_C21DZ - Version 2.01 build 6	*************** Not regi	stred: communication 🖨 🖨 ⊗
File View Tools Editors	Setup Window Help		
	<mark>∦H</mark> ardware configuration		
<u> </u>	†‡† <u>O</u> ptions		
🌆 Main 🕄 Loading 🗟	🕵 <u>U</u> sers	'arking 🕄 MyChamber	

Click on *Options* from the *Setup* drop-down menu.

You can also access the *Options* sub menu by clicking on the following icon:



The Options window allows you to configure Crystal XE software. You can configure the software even if a recipe is currently executing.

All modifications of configuration are saved to the file 'config.xfg' (XML File) located in your project directory.

10.1.

## **General options**

🌋 Options				000
▲       General         ▲       Appearance         ▲       Startup         ▲       Chambers         ▲       Email         ▲       StMS         ▲       Cloud/Mobile         ▲       Data logger         ■       AscII servers         ■       Direct connect         UDP server       Advanced	Sound         Default security sound         Recorder         Number of records per file         Number of records in cache         Timestamp format         Units         Thickness         Thickness display format         Growth rate         Pressure         Dynamic Data Exchange         Use system separator	65000 ( 30 ( ) test //// ( 0.00 ( ///// ( Torr ())	Ramps New custom profie Add Control of the control of the recipes Start ramps on Measured value	
۲ ک	Decimal separator OLE / COM Use a thread for OLE requests Clock Max log level when windows clock changes	Off		Cancel

#### Sound



Click on the "open file" icon **to** select the desired audio file. The provided audio files can be found in your program directory (*Sound*).

📣 WAV ('.wav') audio files only can be used.

Of course, the computer must be equipped with a sound card and speakers.

You can test the sound by clicking on the "play" button

#### Recorder

Recorder			
Number of records per file		65000	3
Number of records in cache		30	3
Timestamp format	dd/mm/yyyy hh:mm:ss (local)		test

When the recorder is running, data is saved in a time-stamped CSV file in the directory <project directory>\Recorder\<year>\<month> until the recorder is stopped.

# For example, the full file name might be D:\riber\XE000\_MyProjectDir\Record\2024\07\2024-07-31\_14-43-49\_REC-Growth.csv

If the file reaches the maximum number of lines allowed, the recorder saves the data in a new time-stamped file.

A line corresponds either to a certain period of time, or to a recipe layer, depending on the trigger mode defined (in the Recorder tab). For example, if you define a trigger time of two seconds, a new line (record) is created every two seconds in the record file.

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about the system recorder, please refer to the chapter Chamber > section <u>**Recorder**</u> in this manual.

Set the maximum number of lines of the record files:



 Number of records in cache
 30

 The recorder is always acquiring data (kept in memory cache), even when it is not recording.

You can define the number of records (lines) the recorder should keep in memory cache and save to your CSV file.

For example, by setting 30, when the recorder starts recording (saving data to the record file), the 30 lines in memory cache are added first to the file. Meaning that, with a time trigger of 2 seconds, the 30 first records of the file correspond to data acquired within the previous 1 minute period (before recording).

#### Timestamp format

Units

Several timestamp formats can be selected. You can test the selected timestamp by pushing the button "test"

Units	
Thickness	µm 🔛
Thickness display format	0.00 🖌
Growth rate	µm/h 🔛
Pressure	Torr 🗹

These units are used in the recipe editor when working with layers in thickness.

#### Dynamic Data Exchange


Dynamic Data Exchange (or DDE) enables data to be exchanged in real time with another application.

For more information, refer to the section: Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE)

#### OLE / COM



OLE/COM is used to exchange data with MSOffice and Libre Office.

- → For more information, refer to the sections:
- Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE)
- Automatic report generation

#### Clock



This option define the level of the event when the clock change (by the user or by the automatic update)

#### Ramps

By default, a ramp allows you to increase or decrease a value linearly over time (set point, output power, etc.).



Default ramp representation (Linear ramp)

You can also define the list of all the profiles you need, using the pane below:

Ramps	
📔 New custom profile	
test1 overshoot	-{} Add
My special profile	🖋 Edit
	1 Up
	🕂 Down
	🔀 Remove
Start ramps on Measured value	
Stop the ramps automatically at the	end of the recipes

Start ramps on, let you the choice between:

- Measured value
- Current setpoint.

It is also possible to choose the behavior of ramps at the end of recipe execution. This only concerns ramps that have been launched in recipes.

Create a new profile:

To create a new profile, click on New profile Mew custom profile to open the profile editor.



Example of profile file: Chart

Example of profile file: Data

The profile editor is divided into two tabs: **Chart tab**: the data is represented visually in line chart **Data tab**: the data is represented numerically in table

On the *Chart* tab, the profile is represented by a line with time on X axis. The Y axis depends on the value to be ramped (temperature, output power).

The range of values on both the X and the Y scales is 0 to 1.

Two points are automatically plotted and cannot be modified (gray points): **first point**: (0.0, 0.0) (measured value) **last point**: (1.0, 1.0) (target set point)

Another point is plotted by default in the middle of the curve. At least the curve must have one more point besides the first and the last points.

The ramp rate (slope) will determine the increase or decrease in value over a defined period of time. (°C/min, %/min). The ramp rate is to be defined when setting the ramp (equipment *Detail view* window).

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about the control of equipment, please refer to the chapter Chamber > section <u>Equipment</u> <u>view</u> in this manual.



The first point on the chart (0.0, 0.0) corresponds to the value from which the coordinates are measured. In *Crystal XE*, it corresponds usually to the current measured value (MV). The last point corresponds to the value target set point value (TSP).

White points correspond to the points that have been added to the curve. The red point is the point being selected.

To plot a point on the chart, double-click on the desired coordinate or right-click on it and select Add a new point. The point coordinate appears in the left-hand corner of the window:



You can modify a point by dragging it with the mouse. To delete a point, right-click on it and select *Delete* this point.

On the *Data* tab, all coordinates are displayed in a table:

<b>R</b>	Insert row	🗙 Delete
#	X	Y
1	0.000	0.000
2	0.099	0.114
3	0.296	0.355
4	0.478	0.669
5	0.646	0.711
6	0.814	0.855
7	1.000	1.000

To add a new point, click one of the cells, and click on *Insert row* Then enter the point's ordinate and abscissa.

To delete a point, click on the *Delete* button

#### Example:





Profile example (test\_4)

Cracker temperature (MV) following in chart

09:37:35 Time

When created, the new profile is automatically added to the list. The profile is saved as a '.*prf* file.

To add a profile file to the list, click on the Add button. 🖶 Add

To edit a profile file select it in the list and click on Edit

or double-click on it.

USE THE UP AND DOWN BUTTONS TO MODIFY THE LIST ORDER:



Clicking the Remove button removes the file from the list but do not delete the profile file.

Then, in a temperature controller equipment view, the profiles added in the list appear in the drop-down list when selecting the ramp:



The profile will appear the in the same order in the drop-down list.

# 10.2. Appearance

#### Appearance of windows



Darken the main form when opening setup and inspect dialog:

A "modal" form is a form (window) that, when open, prevent you to access the main interface until it is closed. By default when such a window is opened, the main interface is darkened.

Nhen one of the **Setup** menu modal forms is opened, the main interface is not darkened.

**Ghost effect**: Toggle the switch to enable/disable Crystal XE windows to become transparent when being moved:

Set default	Glossy	× 1

Tuen on the switch to enable themes. Drop the list down to select one of the themes:



Examples of theme:



Please note that you'll need to restart Crystal XE for the new theme to take full effect.

#### Charts



Click on the Charts colors to edit the default colors used in the charts.





#### System tray

System tray	Off
Move to system tray when minimized	

Toggle this switch to display Crystal XE icon in the Windows notification area (system tray) when the program window is minimized.

To restore Crystal XE, double-click on the system tray icon (located on the bottom right of the task bar) to restore the window:



# 10.3. Startup

On the *Startup* tab, you can modify the default settings at the launch of the software.

🕎 Options		• • •
General - & Appearance - Startup - Chambers	Application status on opening Status of the main window.	
	Force position and size on opening Available only when normal mode is selected	
→ ■ Data logger → ↓ Servers (1) → Modbus servers	Left C Top C Vidth 1920 Height 1080 C	
- ASCII servers - Direct connect	Files to load on opening The following files will be automatically load when the application loads	
└── <i>UDP server</i> └── <u>↓</u> Advanced	다 Up	
	↓ Down	
3 2		
	Ok	Cancel

#### Application status on opening



Select the default state of the window at the launch of the software between this choices:

- Load last position and size (position and size at Crystal XE's last closing)
- Minimize (iconize)
- Maximize (full screen)
- Normal: this choice allows to enter the position and size in the next box.

rce position a	and size on	opening		
Force position Available only who	n and size o <sup>en normal mod</sup>	n opening e is selected		Off
	Left 0	Тор 0 🌻	Width 1920 🍃	Height 1080 🗘

Only available when the status "Normal" is selected

To force the window to open in specific size and position, check the box and adjust the spinners.

#### Files to load on opening

Specify forms to be opened automatically at the launch of the software.



Click on the *Add* button desired form files.

The *Remove* button Remove only removes the selected file from the list but do not delete the form file.

# 10.4. Chambers

For each chamber, you can specify a default security recipe and countdown and allow the charts and recorders to start automatically at the launch of the software.

Select a chamber in the central list
--------------------------------------

🎇 Options	000
General Appearance Startup Startup Startup Startup Sms Chambers Sms Cloud/Mobile Data logger Data logger Ascur servers Ascur servers Direct connect UDP server Advanced Select Chamber Select Chamber Sele	Security Default security recipe Countdown delay (s) 30 Recipe Recipe to load at startup Startup (by chamber)
	Ok Cancel

#### Default security recipe



For each security agent, you can set a security recipe to be executed automatically when the security agent's alarm occurs (*Security* tab). You can set either default security recipe or specify one.

You can also define a time period during which a window will open with a progress bar and allow the user not to launch the recipe.

**Countdown**: determine the period of time after which the security recipe starts executing. During the countdown, a bar graph appears and you can stop the execution of the recipe or execute it immediately.



Security n	ecipe	
Å	This information requires your attention	
	The following security recipe will start after the waiting period HEMT growth.rcp	to be Ited
	Start (5) Abort	
	Amount of time left before execution (s)	
Recipe	to load at startup	

Recipe	
Recipe to load at startup	
	🗾 🔁 🗙

Specify the default security recipe to be executed in the selected chamber by clicking on the file icon selecting the desired recipe file:

40 E	Email		
10.5.			

2 Options	00
Options     General   Appearance   Startup   Chambers     Email   Email   SMS   Cloud/Mobile   Jata logger   Data logger   Connexion   Host smtp.gmail.com   Port 25   User name     Vertice	
Direct connect       UDP server         ▲ Advanced       Password         From       Sender email address         Name       To         Recipient addresses       example: btarus@riber.fr ; jlock@riber.fr	
Options Minimum delay before to send an email (sec) : 0 Number of messages before to send an email : 1 An email will be sent when the first limit will be reached Test	
Ok Canc	2

In order to send an e-mail, the computer must be connected to a local area network with an accessible e-mail server or an Internet connection if you are using an external e-mail server (like gmail).

Turn on the switch and you must fill in all the fields to use the email: host, Port, Use TLS, User name etc...

⇒ Refer to the application note "AN008\_XtalXE\_Use Gmail to send email" to send email using a Gmail account.

#### **Recipient addresses**

Enter the destination addresses in the text box:



You can define several addresses separated by semi-colons:



Example of several addresses.

To enable sending of email when a general event occurs, select the appropriate item in the list located in the bottom right of the screen:



To receive a notification when a specific alarm occurs, you must enable each type of notification in the security settings (*Security* tab) for each specific security agent (in each chamber):



*Email* and/or *SMS* notifications are sent according to the defined threshold values (*Security* tab):



→ For more detail about security agents and alarms configuration, please refer to the chapter Chamber > Chamber security in this manual.

You can also enable the sending of an email when any critical event occurred. Go in the Main Tab and the Security tab, check the choice "On critical event", enable the action box and also the box to enable sending email.

🏧 Main 🛱 Loading 🛱 Degas_chamber 🛱 C21DZ 💐 Parking 🛱 Chamber5
👼 Automation 🧱 User view 🔔 Security
System
CPU_Usage     Image: Computer       Memory_Space     Image: CPU_Usage       Memory_Space     Image: CPU_Usage
Image: Disk_Space     Image: Disk_Space       Image: Disk_Space     Image: Disk_Space       Image: Disk_Space     Image: Disk_Space
On warning or critical event     Image: Constrained event       On all events     Image: Constrained event
Agent Action Log
Sound Output Email SMS Script
Enable sending email
Additionnal message



For *Crystal XE* to send SMS, a specific modem, provided by *RIBER*, must be connected. To connect the modem, click on *Assistant* and follow the installation instructions:



#### Trigger

You can set the options of SMS notifications in the following pane:



SMS options

By default if notifications have been enabled for a security agent, an email or SMS notification will be sent each time the security agent alarm occurs.

You can set a maximum number of character per message:

Maximum number of character per message: 160 📮 Default 160

For example, setting 120 seconds minimum delay prevents the system from sending you more than one SMS every 2 minutes. If you receive a SMS, it will report all alarms that occurred within the specified delay.

You can set a number of warning messages after which a SMS notification will be sent:

Number of messages before to send an email : 3

For example, by setting 3, a SMS notification will be sent after that the security agent alarm has occurred 3 times. That SMS will report all the 3 alarms.

If one of these thresholds is reached, a SMS notification will be sent. In the above examples, when an alarm occurs, a SMS notification will be sent either after two minutes or if two more alarms have occurred.

You can also enable the sending of a SMS when any critical event occurred. Go in the Main Tab and the Security tab, check the choice "On critical event", enable the action box and also the box to enable sending SMS.

n Main 🕄 Loading 🕄 Degas_chamber 🕄 C21DZ 🕄 Parking 🕄 Chamber5
🕱 Automation 🔯 User view 🔔 Security
💂 System
CPU_Usage     Computer     Memory_Space     A
Disk_Space
On critical event
On warning or critical event
On all events
Agent Action Log
Enabled Test
Sound Output Email SMS Script
Enable sending email
Additional mercane
Auditurina message

# 10.7. Cloud/Mobile

羅 Options		000
Private   Image: Construct of the server o	Cloud/Mobile The action is instantaneous. The cloud allows a remote connection from the web and application available on the google store and another for not possible to send data from the mobile to Crystal, it is Open the cloud analyzer at startup Darken the main form to highlight setup and inspect diak Error level Event level that is added to the log when a connection er Login information Use the same email and password you use to log in to yo Email Password System name	Off your smartphone using an window. For safety reasons, it is only possible to view the data. Off Off og No event, quiet ▼ ror occurs. ur CrystalXE.com account. franckd@free.fr ••••• test Test connection
3	۲.	D Ok Cancel

There is a special manual for the cloud and the mobile app. Please refer to this manual for more details.



Toptions	000
General General Startup Startu	When this option is activated, the selected data is sent periodically to an external database using the HTTP / PC         Changing the switch position starts or stops sending immediately         Data logger is disabled         Open data logger analyser at startup         Log event       Critical event
ASCII servers ASCII servers Direct connect UDP server Advanced	♦ Connection Host 192.168.0.99/myscript.php Use proxy Login Password Password Folder name Test connection Monthly change Test connection V Data to send to the logger Template Default  2587 tags Vupdate times When recipe running When idle Send all tags every 30 sec  3000  ms 15000  ms Send all tags every 30 sec
	Ok Cancel

For more information, please refer to the "Data logger" section later in this document.

#### 10.9. Servers

*Crystal XE* allows you to create Modbus or ASCII servers to exchange data with other software or devices (computers or PLCs).

Kodbus protocol abilities are needed to setup the server or modify any of these settings.

## 10.9.1. Modbus servers

You can define as many Modbus servers as you wish. Each server must be configured to operate either in TCP / IP or in serial link.

Each server is located on a line in the table below. Click on a line to bring up the server control buttons.

The n	The modbus server allows you to share data with a third party using the modbus protocol								
-	= Add								
#	Name	СОМ	Status	Tags count					
1	Table1	TCP/IP port 502	Stopped	0	🜔 = 🕲 🗢 🖆 🟹				

# Select the Setting button Select the Setting button

	odbus serve	r configura	ition						
File									
	3								
Mo	lbus paramete		TCP/IP						
De	vice address :	1		al IP Address	Port				
	Mode :	TCP/IP		92. 168. 1. 184	502				
					Address	in hexa			
#	Addr	R/W	Data type	Property					
1									
								Qk	Cancel

Modbus settings

#### Specify Crystal XE device address:



You can set either TCP/IP or serial communication mode:



Set the corresponding settings:

TCP/IP	
Local IP Address 192.168.1.62	Port 502
TCP/IP settings	

serial													
Com port		Baud rate		Parity		Data	a size	Stop I	oit	DTR	DSR	Timeout	(ms)
COM1(*)	-	19200	-	None	-	8	-	1.5	-	Default 🔻	Default 🔻	1000	8

Serial communication settings

#### **Register map**

The data accessible by other software or devices is stored in a register table



Assign each register an arbitrary address between 0 and 65535 (register number). Each data is identified by its address. Each address is allocated an area of memory whose size is defined according to the selected data type (1bit, 16 bits, 32bits, etc.).

Check the following box to show the address in hexadecimal: Address in hexa



Specify the data access:



Local type is not used here, it is only for comparison raison with the modbus client.

Select the data type: 1 bit (0/1) Integer 16, 32 or 64 bits (int) Unsigned integer 16, 32 or 64 bits (unit) Float 32 bits or 32 big BE (Big endian)

int 16 bits 🔻
1 bit
int 16 bits
int 32 bits
int 64 bits
uint 16 bits
uint 32 bits
uint 64 bits
float 32 bits
float 32 bits BE

The property column corresponds to the data to be read and/or written.

Click on the cell to select a property in the Data explorer.

In this example, the client (software or device) is allowed to read the measured value of the *As\_VAC500\_P1* equipment's cracker (C21DZ chamber):

#	Addr	R/W	Data type	Property	
1	0x007B	Read	int 16 bits	C21DZ.As_VAC500_P1.Cracker_Z2.MV	📜 🗈 🗈 📰 🗙
2					

## 10.9.2. ASCII Servers

You can define as many ASCII servers as you wish. Each server must be configured to operate either in TCP / IP or in serial link.

Each server is located on a line in the table below. Click on a line to bring up the server control buttons.

	Servers are enable	ed				1
	r Add					4
#	Name	СОМ	Status	OnReceive	and the second	
1	Table2	TCP/IP port 9010	Stopped			

# Select the Setting button setup

ASCII server configuration [Table2]			
🧐 Communication setup 📅 Tags 📕 Sc	ripts		
Com parameters Mode : TCP/IP	Standard 👻		
TCP/IP			
Port 9010 C Max connections 0 C Local IP Address : 192.168.1.62	IP restriction	Host name restriction	
			<u>O</u> k Cancel

#### ASCII server settings

Tags



For each tag, give a name, a comment (optional) the default value (optional), Com options and which script to execute when the tag is changed.

Script

In the list bellow, enumerate all the scripts used in the OnWrite column of the server.



Others scripts:

- **OnCreate**: This script is executed only when loading the project. It is possible to write a backgound script by using an infinite loop like "repeat (...) until false". In that case, it is recommended to add the instruction "sleep(300)" in the loop.
- **OnError:** this script is executed after a communication error or after the error has been recovered.
- OnReceive: This script is executed after receiving a message from the host, and is
  preferred for XML transactions because it allows long messages to be received with
  function XML\_ReceiveBuf.
- **OnReceiveStr:** As for the OnReceiveStr event, but the string received is passed in the RxFrameStr parameter. However, the string received is limited to 242 characters.
- **OnSimulation:** This script is only executed when Crystal is running in simulation mode.

#### Example of TCP/IP - XML Server using the ASCII server:

Communication settings:

XE ASCII server configuration [Server1]			
Communication setup a Tags So Com parameters Mode : TCP/IP  Coptions : TCP/IP	xipts XML header 💌		
Port 3056C Max connections 1 Local IP Address : 192. 168. 1. 184	IP restriction	Host name restriction	
			<u>O</u> k Cancel

#### Tags:

XE /	ASCII server configuration [Server1]										
۲	Communication setur	n 🖬 Tags 📕 Scripts									
#	User Name	Comment	Default	Opt	OnWrite						
1	SendPing	Write a value to this tag to send a ping			OnSendPing	÷	7	- 🗙			
2	SendEvent	Write a value to this tag to send events			OnSendEvent						
3	SendAlarm	Write a value to this tag to send an alarm			OnSendAlarm						
4	Al_Name	Name of the alarm to send		C							
5	Al_VName	Name of the variable used by the alarm		C							
6	Al_CellNumStr	Cell identifier (ie: R1)		C		-					
7	Al_IsSet	True if the alarm is set, false if the alarm i									
8	Al_VText	Text of the alarm		C							
9	Al_Severity	0=Error, 1=Warning, 2=Critical									
10	ComError	true when communication error with the h									
11	EventFrameTime	Delay between each frame in ms	500	S							
12	StopSendingEvents	=1 to stop sending events									
13	StopSendingPing	=1 to stop sending ping									
14	StopSendingAlarms	=1 to stop sending alarms				-					
15											
										Ok	Cancel
										<u>S</u> r	Concel

KE ASCII server configuration [Server1]			
🥺 Communication setup 💼 Tags 🧮 Scripts			
Scripts used in Tag events OnSendPing OnSendEvent ConSendEvent ConSend	Other scripts Events OnCreate(ServerID:integer) OnError(ServerID:integer) OnSimulation(ServerID:integer) OnSimulation(ServerID:integer) OnCreate: The OnCreate Script is executed just after the It's possible to create an infinite loop (with the script backgrounded. OnError: The OnError script is executed when an alared the status of the alarm is passed as parameters of the status of the alarm is passed as parameters of the onSimulation: OnSimulation script is executed when the simulation mode is enabled.	Script <222 lines> he project is loaded. repeat until false) to have a m is activated or deactivated. ter to the script. e application is not licenced or	
		Qk	Cancel

# Content of the script OnSendPing



Content of the script OnSendAlarm



#### Content of script onSendEvent

uses stdConst,common, events, alarmS3PC;	
//	
// Script Sendevent // IMPORTANT, This script is in evaluative tack to evaid a conflict with the tac Macazze-TD which is als	o used by t
Script Sandlarm	o used by th
//	Var
' i : integer:	Vul
//	Function
FrameDelay:boolean;	
Begin	
if not(ComError) and (EventFrameTime>0) then sleep(EventFrameTime);	
result := not(ComError);	
end;	
	Procedure
AddVarToEvent(VarName,SValue:string);	
Begin	
XML Write (EVTx, 'Event/+V', 'name', VarName);	
AML_Write(EVTX, EVent)# +intfostr(varNum), · ·, Svalue);	
ValNum - ValNumti, End.	
//	Procedure
SendRecipeStatus;	110004410
Begin	
CreateEvent('RecipeStatus');	
AddVarToEvent('RecipeRunning',GetValueProp('App.Var.Recipe.Running'));	
XML_Send(-1,EvTx,EventHeader); // Send the frame now, there is no answer to a NOTIFY message	
End;	
//	//
GetCellStatusStr	
// Called by SendCellEvents	
	Function
Var	
Status · String:	
n · integer:	
Begin	
n := App.Var.Recipe.CellStatus[CellNum];	
Status:='Unknown';	
if n=1 then Status:='Stopped';	
if n=2 then Status:='Ramping to standby';	
<pre>if n=3 then Status:='Standby';</pre>	

```
if n=4 then Status:='Heating to process';
 if n=5 then Status:='Processing';
 if n=6 then Status:='Switching Quartz';
 if n=7 then Status:='Alarm';
 result := status;
end;
//---
       GetCellRecipeSelect(CellNum:integer):string;
Var
 n : integer;
 Status : String;
Begin
 n := App.Var.Recipe.RecipeSelect[CellNum];
 Status:='none';
 if n=1 then status:='Standby';
 if n=2 then status:='Process';
 if n=3 then status:='Cool Down';
 result := status;
end;
//-----Procedure
SendCellEvents(CellNum:integer);
Var
 S,Racine : String;
 n : integer;
Begin
 S := GetCellIdent(CellNum); // example: S = 'R1'
  CreateEvent('StatusCell'+S);
 Racine := 'System.Row'+S;
 AddVarToEvent('CellRecipeStatus',
                                         GetCellStatusStr(CellNum));
  AddVarToEvent('CellRecipeSelect',
                                         GetCellRecipeSelect(CellNum));
  AddVarToEvent('RecipeID',
                                         GetValueProp('App.Var.Recipe.RecipeID'));
  AddVarToEvent('RecipeName',
                                         App.forms.MainUserView.LabelRecipeName.Caption);
  AddVarToEvent('DMC',
                                         App.Var.AMAT.DMC);
                                         FormatFloat('0.###########', App.Var.AMAT.Rollmeter));
GetValueProp(Racine+'.tip_temp.MV_Temp'));
  AddVarToEvent('WebMeter',
  AddVarToEvent('CellTempTop',
                                         GetValueProp(Racine+'.base temp.MV Temp'));
  AddVarToEvent('CellTempBot',
                                         GetValueProp(Racine+'.tip_temp.MV_Pow'));
  AddVarToEvent('CellPowTop',
                                         GetValueProp(Racine+'.base temp.MV Pow'));
  AddVarToEvent ('CellPowBot',
  AddVarToEvent('CellCurrentTop',
                                         GetValueProp(Racine+'.tip_temp.MV_Curr'));
                                         GetValueProp(Racine+'.base_temp.MV_Curr'));
  AddVarToEvent('CellCurrentBot',
                                         GetValueProp(Racine+'.tip temp.RegMode'));
  AddVarToEvent('CellRegulTypeTop',
                                         GetValueProp(Racine+'.base_temp.RegMode'));
  AddVarToEvent('CellRegulTypeBot',
                                         GetValueProp(Racine+'.tip_temp.CSP'));
  AddVarToEvent('CellCurrentSetPointTop',
                                         GetValueProp(Racine+'.base_temp.CSP'));
  AddVarToEvent('CellCurrentSetPointBot',
  AddVarToEvent('CellQuartzRate',
                                         GetValueProp(Racine+'.Cygnus.CY Rate'));
  AddVarToEvent('CellQuartzShutterStatus', GetValueProp(Racine+'.Cygnus.CY Shutter'));
  AddVarToEvent('CellCurrentQuartzSelected',GetValueProp(Racine+'.Cygnus.CY_Position'));
  AddVarToEvent('CellQuartzRemainingLife', GetValueProp(Racine+'.Cygnus.CY_Remaining_life'));
 XML Send(-1, EvTx, EventHeader); // Send the frame now, there is no answer to a NOTIFY message
end;
//-----Procedure
SendLightColumn;
Begin
  CreateEvent('StatusLightColumn');
 AddVarToEvent('RedLight', GetValueProp('App.Var.LightColumn.RedSatus'));
 AddVarToEvent('YellowLight',GetValueProp('App.Var.LightColumn.YellowStatus'));
 AddVarToEvent('GreenLight', GetValueProp('App.Var.LightColumn.GreenStatus'));
 AddVarToEvent('BlueLight', GetValueProp('App.Var.LightColumn.BlueStatus'));
AddVarToEvent('WhiteLight', GetValueProp('App.Var.LightColumn.WhiteStatus'));
 XML Send(-1, EvTx, EventHeader); // Send the frame now, there is no answer to a NOTIFY message
end:
//---
Begin
 if StopSendingEvents or (SendEvent=0) then EXIT;
  if FrameDelay then SendRecipeStatus;
 for i:=0 to NB MAX CELLS-1 do
 Begin
   if FrameDelay then SendCellEvents(i);
  end;
  if FrameDelay then SendLightColumn;
  SendEvent:=0;
End;
```

Content of the OnReceive script:

Uses common, StdConst, AlarmS3PC, alarms, events;

```
//----
                                 -----//
                                                                                                     ASC1
Server Script
// The host computer will send request to Crystal XE, this script manages these requests.
// Creation RIBER: July 2018
//-----Var
idTx, idRx,NodeNum : integer;
S : string;
//-----
                -----//
AddOneVar
// Called by SendVariablesList
// Add a variable to the XML file identified by idTx
//-----
                                             -----Procedure
AddOneVar(SName, SType, STransient, Description: string);
Var Path : String;
Begin
 XML Write(idTx, 'Variable-SD/+Variable', 'name', SName);
 Path := 'Variable-SD/#'+IntToStr(NodeNum);
 XML_Write(idTx,Path,'type',SType);
 XML Write(idTx,Path,'transient',STransient); // Transient ?
 if if Tength(Description)>0 then XML Write(idTx,Path,'',Description); // Transient ?
 NodeNum := NodeNum + 1;
end:
//-----//
SendVariablesList
// - Called by the main in respons of the message "Variable-SD-Query"
-----Procedure
SendVariablesList;
Begin
 idTx := XML Create;
 NodeNum := 0;
 // used by alarms
 AddOneVar('RecipeRunning','bool','false','General Recipe status: running or stopped, true when at least one cell recip
is running');
 AddOneVar('RecipeID','integer','false','Current Recipe ID (available only when recipe is running)');
 AddOneVar('RecipeName','string','false','Name of the current recipe (available only when recipe is running)');
                            'float'
                                    ,'false','= Roll Meter');
 AddOneVar('WebMeter',
                                     ,'false','Cell identifier used for alarm events');
 AddOneVar('Cell',
                            'string'
                                     ,'false','Status of the recipe');
 AddOneVar('CellRecipeStatus', 'string'
AddOneVar('CellRecipeSelect', 'string'
                            'string'
                                     ,'false','Recipe mode');
                            'float'
 AddOneVar('CellTempTop',
                                     ,'false','Cell Temperature top in degree C');
 AddOneVar('CellTempBot',
                            'float'
                                     ,'false','Cell Temperature bottom in degree C');
 AddOneVar('CellPowTop',
                            'float'
                                      ,'false','Cell power top in watt');
 AddOneVar('CellPowBot',
                            'float'
                                      ,'false','Cell power bottom in watt');
                            'float'
 AddOneVar('CellCurrentTop',
                                     ,'false','Cell power top in ampere');
                                     ,'false','Cell power bottom in ampere');
 AddOneVar('CellCurrentBot',
                            'float'
                            'integer' ,'false','Cell regulation type top: 0:voltage ; 1:Current ; 2:Power ; 3:Rati
 AddOneVar('CellRegulTypeTop',
; 4:Temperature ; 5:Rate');
                            'integer' ,'false','Cell regulation type bottom: 0:voltage ; 1:Current ; 2:Power
 AddOneVar('CellRegulTypeBot',
3:Ratio ; 4:Temperature ; 5:Rate');
 AddOneVar('CellCurrentSetPointTop','float', 'false','Cell Current setpoint top with unit depending of CellRegulTyr
top');
 AddOneVar('CellCurrentSetPointBot','float'
                                             ,'false','Cell Current setpoint bottom with unit depending c
CellRegulType bottom');
 AddOneVar('CellQuartzRate',
                            'float'
                                     ,'false','Quartz rate in Angstrom per second');
 AddOneVar('CellQuartzShutterStatus','integer','false','0:closed ; 1: Open');
 AddOneVar('CellCurrentQuartzSelected','integer','false','0: Unknown ; 1-12 : Quartz Number');
 AddOneVar('CellQuartzRemainingLife', 'float','false','Cell quartz remaining life in percent');
                            'string' ,'false','Data matrix code');
 AddOneVar('DMC',
 AddOneVar('RedLight', 'integer', 'false', 'Status of the red light of the light column, 0:off ; 1:continuous ; 2
flashing');
 AddOneVar('YellowLight', 'integer', 'false', 'Status of the yellow light of the light column, 0:off ; 1:continuous ; 2
flashing');
 AddOneVar('GreenLight', 'integer', 'false', 'Status of the green light of the light column, 0:off ; 1:continuous ; 2
flashing');
 AddOneVar('BlueLight', 'integer', 'false' , 'Status of the blue light of the light column, 0:off ; 1:continuous ; 2
flashing');
 AddOneVar('WhiteLight', 'integer', 'false' , 'Status of the white light of the light column, 0:off ; 1:continuous ; 2
flashing');
 XML Answer(idTx, '@');
End:
                            -----Procedure
//---
SendCommandList; // no command is processed by XE but we need to send an answer
Begin
 idTx := XML Create;
 XML Write(idTx, 'Command-SD', '', '');
 NodeNum := 0;
```

```
XML Answer(idTx,'@');
end;
//---
                  _____//
SendRecipesList
// - Called by the main in respons of the message "RecipeList-Request"
//-----
                                                                      -----Procedure
SendRecipesList;
Var
 EOL : boolean; // End Of List
 RecipeNum, RecipeID : integer;
 Section, RecipeTitle : String;
Begin
 idTx := XML_Create;
 EOL := false;
 RecipeNum := 0;
 for RecipeID:=1 to 100 do
 Begin
   Section := 'Recipe#'+IntToStr(RecipeID);
   RecipeTitle := ReadIniStr(INI FNAME, Section, 'LabelRecipeName','');
   if Length (RecipeTitle) >0 then
   Begin
    XML_Write(idTx, 'RecipeList-Response/+Recipe','', Section+':'+RecipeTitle);
   End;
 end;
 XML Answer(idTx,'@');
End;
//-----
               _____//
SendPingResponse
// - Called by the main in respons of the message "PING-REQUEST"
//-----
                                                   -----Procedure
              ____
                   _____
SendPingResponse;
Begin
 idTx := XML Create;
 MessageType := 'PING-RESPONSE';
 XML_Answer(idTx,'@');
End;
.//---
                                       -----//
Debug PropList
// for debug purpose only
//-----
                       -----Procedure
Debug PropList; // output properties to the console
Begin
 Writeconsole('Prolog: '+Prolog);
 Writeconsole('ContentLength: '+IntToStr(ContentLength));
Writeconsole('MessageIDRx: '+IntToStr(MessageIdRx));
 Writeconsole('MessageIDTx: '+IntToStr(MessageIdTx));
 Writeconsole('TransactionID: '+IntToStr(TransactionId));
End:
//-----//
AddOneAlarm
// - Called by SendAlarmList only just bellow
11
   Example of XML
11
   <Alarm-SD>
11
     <Alarm name="ComLostS3PC1"> <Description> Communication lost with S3PC1 </Description> <Variable name="VarName"/</pre>
</Alarm>
11
    <Alarm name="ComLostAMAT"> <Description> Communication lost with AMAT</Description> </Alarm>
11
   </Alarm-SD>
//-----Procedure
AddOneAlarm(AName,SDescription,VarName:String);
Var Path : String;
Begin
 XML_Write(AlTx, 'Alarm-SD/+Alarm', 'name', AName);
 Path := 'Alarm-SD/#'+IntToStr(NodeNumAl);
 XML Write(AlTx,Path+'/Description','',SDescription);
 if length(VarName)>0 then XML_Write(AlTx,Path+'/Variable','name',VarName);
 NodeNumAl := NodeNumAl + 1;
End;
//---
                                                               -----//
SendAlarmsList
// - Called by the main in respons of the message "Alarm-SD-Query" % \mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A}
//-----
                                        ______Procedure
                              _____
SendAlarmsList;
Var
 bit : integer;
 AlarmName, VarName : String;
Begin
 InitS3PC TabText And Level;
 AlTx := XML Create;
 NodeNumAl := 0;
```

```
//AddOneAlarm('MainAlarm','The main alarm is activated, see Crystal software for more information','');
 AddOneAlarm('ComLostS3PC1','Communication lost with the S3PC1','');
AddOneAlarm('ComLostAMAT','Commmunication lost with the AMAT','');
 for bit:=0 to 63 do
 Begin
   AlarmName := TabAlarmName[bit];
   if Length(AlarmName)>0 then
   Begin
     if TabCellOneOnly[bit] then VarName:=''; else VarName:='Cell';
     AddOneAlarm(AlarmName,TabAlarmText[bit],VarName);
   End;
 end;
 XML_Answer(AlTx,'@');
End;
//-----//
SendEventsList
// Called by the main in respons of the message "Event-SD-Query" % \mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A}
//-----Procedure
SendEventsList;
Begin
 CreateEventList;
 XML_Answer(EvTx,'@');
End;
     -----// MAIN
//---
entry point of the script
                             -----Beain
//------
 ComError := 0;
 idRx := XML Create;
 if XML_ReceiveBuf(idRx) then
 Begin
   if compareText('DATA-REQUEST',MessageType)=0 then
   Begin
     S := XML Read(idRx, '', '','?');
     if (CompareText('Variable-SD-Query',S)=0) then SendVariablesList;
     if (CompareText('Alarm-SD-Query',S)=0) then SendAlarmsList;
if (CompareText('Event-SD-Query',S)=0) then SendAlarmsList;
if (CompareText('Command-SD-Query',S)=0) then SendCommandList;
     if (CompareText('RecipeList-Request',S)=0) then SendRecipesList;
   end;
   if compareText('PING-REQUEST',MessageType)=0 then SendPingResponse;
   if compareText('PING-RESPONSE', MessageType)=0 then SendPing := 0;
   // increment the messageId
    MessageIdTx:=MessageIdTx+1;
   if MessageIdTx>$FFFFFFF then MessageIdTx:=1;
 End;
End;
```

## 10.9.1. Direct connect

Toptions			•••
← 🏧 General ← 🏶 Appearance → M Startun	DC Server enabled The direct connect feature allows you to easily connect a tablet or cell phone to Crystal XE via the local network.		
	The ID used during the connection is used as a config file. Server URL to use http://10.95.14.63:80 Password Password Password used by dients TCP Port 80		
Servers (2)     Modbus servers     Africal Servers     Direct connect     UDP server     Advanced	Connected dients Config files archive Session ID Connection date/time Connection duration Connection duratio		
		Ok	Cancel

This option activates the direct connection mode. This mode enables another application to receive Crystal XE data on a regular basis. The XE mobile application (under Android and Windows) is perfectly suited to this protocol. It is also possible to use this protocol to activate remote chamber on another Crystal XE in the network.

Crystal XE uses the protocol HTTP over TCP/IP.

It uses the POST method.

The protocol is the same as that specified for sending data to the cloud.

→ For more information, refer to the section "Direct connect protocol"

#### 10.9.2. UDP Server



This option identifies Crystal XE on a network. By activating this option, Crystal XE will respond to a message sent in brodcast with the identifier "CrystalXE".

The response will contain the PC's IP address, Crystal XE version and computer name.

#### 10.10. Advanced

These options are only used for debug purpose.

## **10.10.1.** Black box (background circular recorder)



The black box allows you to record communication data between the devices connected to *Crystal XE*.

11. USERS		
XE CRYSTAL XE 64 bits - DEMO_C21DZ - Version 2.01 build File View Tools Editors Setup Window Help	6 *********** Not registred: communication disabled ***********	•••
Hardware configuration	ulin A totala	

Drop the *Setup* menu down or click on the following icon and click on *Users* to open the *User administration* window.



User restrictions are disabled by default

You can also open the *Users administration* window by right-clicking on the *User* icon, located in the top left-hand corner of the main interface, and selecting *Manage Users*.



All modifications of configuration are saved to the file '*config.xfg*' (XML file) located in your project directory.

You systematically need to enter the admin password to open the Users administration window.

Enter administration pass	sword	8
Password		
	ОК	Cancel

The default password is 'admin'.

You can change the password by clicking on the *Change admin password* button, in the bottom left-hand corner of the window.



Only the admin password can give you access to the *Users management* window. Check the Enable user restrictions box to allow user logins and restrictions. When the box is unchecked, all user restrictions are disabled and users cannot log in.



KE Users administration					
Enable user restrictions					
Enable auto logOFF after a time (	min)				
User	🕂 Add	User name	User		
Engineer	<u>ት</u> ሥ	Password	****		
	🕂 Down				
	😳 Remove		Operator	-	🎎 Edit groups
			Chambers		
			Loading		
			C21DZ		
			Parking		
			- Hychamber		
Change admin password			ОК		Cancel

User administration window

By default, the system automatically log the user off after 6 minutes of inactivity. You can adjust the inactivity period using the following spinner:

Enable auto logOFF after a time (min)

To disable automatic log off, uncheck the box as follows:

Enable auto logOFF after a time (min)

# 11.1. Managing users

The box on the left side of the window lists all users.

User	🕂 Add
Engineer	合炉
	🕂 Down
	😳 Remove

By default two users are created: an operator and an administrator.

Use the following buttons to add a new user, change the list order or delete a user.



Select a user to display its settings on the right side of the window:

User name	User 1		
Password	Authorization group		
	Authorization group	-	
	Operator	-	🎎 Edit groups
	Chambers Loading Degas_chamber C21DZ Parking MyChamber		

You can modify existing user name, password, the group they are assigned to and the chambers within which they can perform tasks (according to their group permissions).

#### 11.1.1. Creating a new user

Click on the Add button to add a new user: 4 Add

Enter the **user name** in the dialog box:

Add a user	(	×
Enter a UserName for this User	User 2	
	OK Cancel	

Assign a **password** to the user

User name	User 2
Password	****

From the drop-down list below, select the group the user should be assigned to:

Authorization grou	p
Operator	<b>T</b>
Admin	
Operator	

Each user group has a defined set of tasks their members are allowed or forbidden to perform. By default two user groups are available: administrator and operator. You can modify group restrictions or create your own user groups by clicking on *Edit groups*:



In the Chambers box, select the chamber within which the user permissions apply:



If the chamber is unchecked, the user will not be able to perform any tasks within that chamber.

## 11.1.2. Managing groups

Click on the *Edit* group button state groups to open the *Group authorization* editor.


In the *Group authorization* editor, you can assign permissions to groups, modify group names and add or delete groups.

Select one of the groups in the left box to display its permissions on the right side of the window.

Two groups are already created: *Admin* and operator. By default the administrator group (*Admin*) grants all privileges.

You can modify any existing group permissions by checking/unchecking the corresponding boxes.

Use the following button to add a new group, modify the list order or delete a group:



To create a new group, click on the Add button: d-Add

Enter the group name in the dialog box:

Add a Group			8
Enter a unic name for this Group	MyGroup		
		ОК	Cancel

To assign permissions to a group, check the corresponding boxes:



When the box is unchecked the user is not allowed to perform that task in any chamber.

### **Group permissions**

### Hardware configuration

Allow/forbid users to access the Project configuration window and configure the chambers, equipment and devices.



### Options

Allow/forbid users to access the Options window and modify Crystal XE set-up.



### **User rights**

Allow/forbid users to access the User management window.



At least one user must be allowed to modify user rights.

#### **File New**

Allow/forbid users to create new files (forms, scripts, projects).

#### File open

Allow/forbid users to open files (forms, scripts, security Files, projects, etc.)

#### **Control equipment**

Allow/forbid users to modify the equipment values (such as set points, etc.).

#### Setup equipment

Allow/forbid users to modify the sub equipment setup values (such as minimum and maximum set points etc.).

**Disable com & sockets** Allow/forbid users to enable/disable communication ports (Devices tab).

#### **Securities On/Off**

Allow/forbid users to enable/disable security agents (alarms).

#### Securities change

Allow/forbid users to modify the security agents' threshold values (alarms).

#### Edit forms

Allow/forbid users to edit forms (access the Tool palette).

#### Edit script

Allow/forbid users to edit scripts in the Pascal editor.

### **Edit templates**

Allow/forbid users to edit equipment and device templates (In the Project configuration window).

### **Recipe control**

Allow/forbid users to control the execution of recipes.

#### **Batch control**

Allow/forbid users to control the execution of batches.

#### **Recorder control**

Allow/forbid users to control recorders and edit recorder templates.

#### Acknowledge alarms

Allow/forbid users to acknowledge alarms that occurred.

#### **Exit application**

Allow/forbid users to exit Crystal XE program.

# 12. RECIPES

# 12.1. How does the recipe work?

In MBE, a recipe is based on a succession of layers.

A layer is determined by a list of actions to be performed and a time to wait.

The waiting time can be entered by the user or can be calculated according to the thickness of the material to be grown.



In MBE, the recipe engine is essential for epitaxies to be repeatable. The accuracy of the recipes is therefore essential. Crystal XE fully complies with these basic requirements.



### Realtime: the heart of Crystal XE

Crystal uses an absolute and not a relative time base. This means that a drift due to a timeconsuming stain will have no impact on the time of the layers. In addition, the process of executing the tasks performed at each layer uses all the capacities of the processor to reduce time as much as possible. Everything has been thought of to optimize times such as priority management throughout the management of communications with the devices in order to guarantee maximum repeatability with time drifts of less than 9ms.

Crystal XE can manage several process chambers simultaneously and therefore several recipes can be executed in parallel.

The operating principle of the recipes is the same whether the editor was used to write them, whether with the recipe editor ("rcp" file) or by script recipes ("pas" file)

# 12.2. Recipe editor

The editor offers an easy to use interface, requires no programming skills, and allows many possibilities.



#### Start a new recipe

To start a new recipe, click on the button "Create a new recipe" and on the first choice "New recipe (Using recipe editor)" to open the Main recipe editor.



The recipe created is saved in a ".rcp" file, unlike script recipes which are text files with the extension '.pas' and containing a Pascal program.

The file format of the ".rcp" file is XML.

12.3. Overview of	the recipe editor
🐹 Main recipe editor [HEMT growth.rcp]	000
File Edit View	
🗎 🎽 🖟 🛍 🗓 💺 Offsets G.Rates Var	
Image: Contract of the contract	Properties       General       Show map       Show map       Substrate on top         Trie       Trie       00:00:00.000         Author       Company       00:00:00.000         Comments       Map       View         Creation:       11/06/2015 08:56:22       View on         Substrate       View on       Substrate)         Use       Distory script file names       Note file report the         Report       Report also layers in loops       Finish buffer growth 15min         HEMT       End growth       Total = 00:58:15.000 - 57 layers
Detaci	1 2 Ga2 ABI65 P11 AL ABIN60DF P6
# Laver         Comment           01 00:00:00:00         buffer growth 10min           DO 25         25x Ga&AlGaAs           01 00:10:00:00         0           02 00:10:30:00         END LOOP           52 00:35:00:00         Finish buffer growth 15min           52 00:35:00:00         Finish buffer growth 15min           Sub recipe end GaAs growth.rcp         End growth	suration Thickness Material Control Control 10 min Grid view CLOSE 30 sec Grid Solution Grid Control 15 min Grid Control 15 min Grid Control 15 min Grid Control 16 Min Grid Control 16 Min Grid Control 17 Min Grid Control 17 Min Grid Control 18 Min Grid Control 19 Min Grid Control 19 Min Grid Control 19 Min Grid Control 19 Min Grid Control 10 Mi

Crystal XE offers two possibilities to edit your recipe.

### Tree view and grid view:

You can use either the **tree view** or the **grid view** and switch between these two views at any time.

In the **tree view**, the top-level element represents either:

- A layer which is defined by a list of actions to be executed and ends with a waiting time.
- **A loop** is useful to repeat a list of top-level elements. Several loops can be nested. It is also possible to add a ramp in the beginning of the loop, outside a layer, to have a ramp whose final set point is at the end of the loop.
- **A pause** to suspend the execution of the recipe until the user presses the resume button.
- A sub-recipe which is another recipe included. Several inclusions are possible.
- **A script** allows you to insert a piece of pascal program into a simple recipe. It is then possible to mix the two recipe possibilities.

# 12.4. Work with the tree view

#### Create your layers



Use the button 💀 to add a layer or 🗊 or 🗊 to move the selected layer, or 😰 to delete the selected layer.

Right-click on any of the layers to display other available options.



For each layer, you can expand the list of equipment and associated parameters that have been defined:



### Example of a layer

Defining the parameters



In the center of the editor window, the *Properties* tab displays all equipment and sub equipment and their associated configurable properties listed in a tree view.

For each layer, you can:

- specify the layer duration,
- enter information for the user,
- select a property and set the parameters,
- add theses parameters to the layer.

Expand the equipment and sub equipment lists and select the desired property to configure the parameters using the pane below.

The configured parameters will be added to the layer in the tree structure on the left side of the editor window.

### 12.5. Work with the grid view

How to detach the grid view

The grid view can be detached. To do this click on the detach button which is located at the top right. To restore the window to its original position, close the window with the cross at the top right.

#### Work faster with the grid view

The grid view allows you to display all the equipment and sub-equipment in separate columns. Each line contains a top-level element. it allows you to have a more synthetic view of the evolution of temperatures, shutters, valve positions etc ... Click on an element such as for example a temperature ramp to be able to easily modify it in the central view of the editor. **Shutters:** Double-clicking on a cache cell allows you to simply change its state. If the shutter was closed, a double click will open it.

Difference between the text "CLOSE" / "OPEN" and the red background color or green.

OPEN	CLOSE	Red backgound color indicates that the shutter is closed.
		« CLOSE » indicates a closing action

The **background color** indicates the presumed state of the shutter, considering a previous action. For example, a green background color indicates that the shutter status is supposed to be open because an opening action has occurred previously.

The text Open or Close indicates that an opening or closing action has been initiated.

**Double click** to toggle the state of the shutter.

Right click and select Kernove [Shutter.Control = CLOSE]

It is not recommended to have several successive identical actions. This causes unnecessary write requests to the hardware which can in some cases slow down the frequency of communication with the devices.

**Take care** to check the status of the shutters because it can be wrong in some cases, especially when returning a loop, or after a script or after a sub recipe.

#### Material column:

						1	2	3
					As_VAC500_P1		P_KPC250_P2	
					_	Shutter	Shutter	Cracker_Z2
#	Layer	Description	Duration	Thickness	Material	Control	Control	RampSP
01	00:00:00.000		4 sec		Р	CLOSE	OPEN	
	Script (len=32)		(		-			
	DO 2				-			
01	00:00:04.000		3 sec		As	OPEN	CLOSE	123 (linear while layer time)
02	00:00:07.000		2 sec		As	8		4.5. 6.510. 352.
-	END LOOP		1					

The material column is only visible in the grid view.

When possible, for each layer, the material that is being grown is displayed in the material column. To know the material that is being grown, Crystal only takes into account shutters that are open. It is therefore necessary to verify this information yourself.

The symbols which are used as material can be modified within each equipment.

To modify the symbols, go in the Equipment view, select the appropriate equipment and push on the setup button located at the bottom right of the detail view.

to delete the action.

XE CRYSTAL XE 64 bitsDEMO_C21DZ - Version 2.03 buil								
C21 DZ sysden	no					RIE	BER SOFT	*
🌆 Main 🗟 Loading 🗟 Degas_chamber 🗟 C21DZ 🗃	Parkin	g 閣 Chamber5						
🤹 Equipment 🔔 Security 👗 Recipe		Charts 🔡 R		Statistics	Devices			
		As_VAC500_P1		MV 7	787.90 CS	P 787.77	Off TSP 100.00	
Material: As					Closed	OK		1
		P_KPC250_P2	Cracker_Z2	10 MV	750.30 Cs	P 750.13	Off TSP 500.00	)
				MV 2	Closed CS	P 292.50	Off TSP 0.00	-111
			Valve_NVC6000	🧭 Pos 🚺	).00		Off TOP 0.00	
	۹			<b>1</b> ° M∨ <b>1</b> 70	Closed	ар <u>1012.70</u> ОК	Off TSP 300.00	)
	*			, 1° M∨ 6	63.78 Cs Closed	663.78 OK	Off TSP 300.00	
	4	C_C_cell_P5	Temperature Shutter	рт и с П	Closed	SP 1500.03 OK	Off TSP 0.00	
		Al_ABN60DF_P6	Tip	MV 2	270.20 CS	P 0.00	Off TSP 0.00	
					Closed Closed	OK		
				le w∧ s	787.80 CS	P 787.57	Off TSP 0.00	
Setup As_VAC500_P1 ×				1° MV 6	694.02 CS	693.98	Off TSP 0.00	
Material		C_CBr4_LTI_P9		1° MV 2	225.33 CS	P 225,20	Off TSP 0.00	- 11
Material symbol				<b>7</b>	Closed	ОК		_
				MV ∎	682.70 CS	P 682.70	Off TSP 0.00	
Ok Cancel					Closed Closed	OK	UN ISP U.UU	- 11
Setup Inspect Help	î.		2 3					
All events Criticals and warpings. Communication Liser events								
© 2020/02/20 10:59:47: (008) User:Closing hardware configuratio 2020/02/20 10:59:31: (008) User:Opening hardware configuratio 2020/02/20 10:59:30: (000) User:C21D2: 5b, VCOr300 P12.Val 2020/02/20 10:59:30: (200) User:C21D2: 5b, VCOr300 P12.Val	on tion lve_AVP	6504 Force Closure wa				Popup Never	window on alarm	
■ 2020/02/20 10:59:30: (800) User:C2102: Sb_VCor300_P12.Val ■ 2020/02/20 10:59:30: (800) User:C21D2: As_VAC500_P1.Valve	e_AVP65	6504 Thermal expansio 604 Force Closure watc	n watchdog started hdog started					

How to change the material symbol of a cell which is used in the recipes.

# 12.6. The map view

The map view is a representation of the assembly of layers based on the time of the layers. Be careful, this does not represent the thickness of the layers but just gives an idea of the result obtained.

SUBSTRATE	<b></b> 00:00:00.000
Deoxidation	
buffer growth 10min	
finish buffer growth 15min	
HEMT	
End growth	
Total= 01:32:15.000 - 62 lavers	

The map view represents the durations of all the layers.

The map view is interactive: click on a layer to select the current layer. Please note, if you click on the element or a loop, the first layer of the loop will be selected. The color of each layer can be customized.

The update time of the map view can be very important if the recipe is made up of many layers. In this case, you can deactivate the drawing of the map view. This will significantly increase the refresh times. To deactivate the drawing of the map view, uncheck the box "Show map"



Options available to draw the map view.

The check box **Show line** will display or not the lines of separation of the layers. Disable this option to make the display faster.

Substrate on top is used either to draw the substrate at top or to draw it at the bottom.



#### How to add a top-level element 12.7.

To add or insert a new top-level element, right-click with the mouse in the tree view or in the grid view to open the context menu.



This popup menu is also available in the grid view. 1

Pop-up menu which is displayed when the right mouse button is clicked in the tree view or in the grid view.

In the tree view, it is also possible to add a layer by pushing the "+" button:

 Main [Nona	me] Duration=	 1

Button to add a new layer.

# 12.8. Add an empty layer

Add a layer by using the popup menu or the button in the tree view.

Popup menu



Button ⊡ in the tree view:

After adding a new layer or after selecting an existing layer, enter or change the layer duration.

It is possible to enter either a **constant** layer duration or a **variable** layer duration.

#### **Constant layer duration**

To use a constant value, you can push on the small arrows and change the hours, minutes, seconds or milliseconds:



You can also directly enter a number:

XIII Main recipe editor [Noname]	
File Edit View	
<u>[+] Expand all</u> <u>[-] Collapse all</u> → Main [Noname] Duration= 3 sec □ □ 01:00:00:00.000Layer duration= 3 sec □ □ ① ① ③ ④ ④ ④ ④ ④	Properties Generated script Charts           No condition         Image: script scrip
	Comment Comment

Enter the layer duration

By default, the unit of time is the second, so if you enter "3" followed by Enter, the time will be 3 seconds but you can also enter the time in the format "HH:MM:SS.MMM"

The time format is the following

### <HH=HOUR>:<MM=MINUTES>:<SS=SECONDS>:<MMM=MILLISECONDS>

### Variable layer duration

A variable layer duration can be:

- Using tags or properties like a global variable,
- A formula based on one or several tags,
- The result of a function in a script library,
- A local variable.

All these possibilities are described in the next sections.

# 12.9. Add a layer with events

🔲 Layer		
L <u>a</u> yer with events >	<u>A</u> ll shutters closed	
🕑 L <u>o</u> op	A <u>l</u> I PID in AUTO mode	
II <u>P</u> ause	All <u>P</u> ID setpoints >	
📸 Sub Recipe	All PID in MANUAL mode	
🧾 S <u>c</u> ript	All PI <u>D</u> outputs	

These choices allow you to add a layer while inserting predefined actions.

For example, if you want to start a recipe by ensuring that all shutters are closed, select the first item in the menu "All shutters closed".

# 12.10. Add actions to a layer

Once you have added a layer in the recipe, you can add actions to execute. The center of the window lets you select an action to be performed using the data explorer.

XE Main recipe editor [Noname]	
File Edit View	NU
🗋 🝃 🔛 🛍 🗓 🐩 Öffsets G.Rates Var	
[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all	Properties Generated script Charts
Plain [Noname] Duration=     O1:00:00:00.000- Layer duration= 0 sec     If → → → →	No condition
	Layer duration 00:00:00.000
	Comment
	Background color
	□ <u>+ Expand all</u> <u>- Collapse all</u> □- 🕄 C21DZ
	⊕ ≪ As_VAC500_P1     ⊕ ≪ P KPC250_P2
	E - Si_ABN135D_P3
	E_G_C_C_cell_P5
	E ALABNGODF_P6
	In1_ABI85_P10 Ga2_ABI85_P11
	Sb_VCor300_P12
	🗄 🧠 Manipulator 🗈 📲 BakeOut
	🗄 📲 Wafer_temperature
	Value or formula
	Add/Modify
Detach	
# Layer Description Duration Thickness Material	
01 00:00:00.000 0 sec	

This screenshot shows the recipe data explorer

Browse the data explorer and select a tag to add actions in the recipe. You have to open a branch up to a tag.

Depending of the type of tag, several types of actions are possible:

- Binary action: ON/OFF or Open/Close
- Regulation mode Auto/Manual
- Value or formula
- Ramp using a constant value or a formula

#### **Binary action:**

To change the position of a shutter, select the "Control" tag of the shutter.



This screenshot shows how to add a shutter position change in the selected layer.

Press on the button OPEN to toggle between OPEN and CLOSE and then press on the button Add to add the action to the current layer.



Tree view after adding a shutter event.

						1
						As_VAC500_P1
						Shutter
#	Layer	Description	Duration	Thickness	Material	Control
01	00:00:00.000		0 sec			CLOSE

Grid view after adding a shutter event.

#### **Regulation mode Auto/Manual:**

[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all
🖃 📆 C21DZ 🔺
🖨 🦓 As_VAC500_P1 📃
🗐 👘 🤴 Cracker_Z2
main RegMode
📴 RampSP
RampOP
🕀 🐞 Reservoir_Z1
🕀 👘 Shutter
🚊 🖤 🐲 Valve_AVP6504
ш 📲 P_КРС250_Р2
🕀 🍕 Si_ABN135D_P3
E Be_ABN135D_P4
Find C C cell P5
Regulation mode (Auto/Manu)
Regulation mode Auto
You must not change the mode and the setpoint in the same layer.
Add

Tag to change the regulation mode of a temperature controller.

**Important**: when changing the control mode of a temperature controller, no other action must be performed in the same layer of the same controller such as sending a set point. The minimum duration of the layer must be 1 second to be sure that the controller has switched its operating mode.

#### Value or formula other than a ramp:

This type of action can be used for example to change the value of an analog output.



Simple value to change.

It is possible to enter either a constant value, a formula using tags or a script function or a combinason of all.

#### Ramp using a constant value or a formula

The ramps are generally used by temperature controllers whether in automatic mode (temperature setpoint) or in manual mode (output value in percentage). The ramps can be used in other cases such as controlling a valve position.

Use RampSP or RampOP ?

Depending on the operating mode of the regulator (Auto or manual), you will have to choose the appropriate tag. In auto mode, choose the RampSP tag while in manual mode, choose the RampOP tag.

□·····S       C21DZ         □·····S       As_VAC500_P1         □·····S       P_KPC250_P2         □····S       Si_ABN135D_P3         □····S       Be_ABN135D_P4         □····S       C_C_cell_P5         □····S       Al_ABN60DF_P6         □····S       Tip         □····S       RegMode         □····S       RampSP         □····S       Base         □····S       Shutter         □····S       Shutter         □····S       Al_ABNGP5
As_VAC500_P1     As_VAC500_P2     P_KPC250_P2     Si_ABN135D_P3     Be_ABN135D_P4     G_C_C_cell_P5     Al_ABN60DF_P6     Tip     Base     Tip     RegMode     Ti2     P     RampSP     Ti2     RampOP     Base     Shutter     Shutter     N_Plasma_P7     G_1 ABN(60DF_D0
P_KPC250_P2     Si_ABN135D_P3     Be_ABN135D_P4     C_C_cell_P5     Al_ABN60DF_P6     Tip     Ti
Si_ABN135D_P3     Be_ABN135D_P4     C_C_cell_P5     Al_ABN60DF_P6     Tip     Ti
Be_ABN135D_P4     Ge_C_cell_P5     Ge_ @ Tip     Ge_
C_C_ccell_P5
Al_ABN60DF_P6
Tip Tip RegMode Tip P Tip Tip P Tip Tip Tip Tip Tip Tip Tip Tip
•••• 121 P     ••••• 121 I     ••••• 121 D     ••••• 121 RampSP     •••••• 8ase     ••••••• 8ase     ••••••••••• 8hutter     •••••••••• 8hutter     •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
I I I I I I I I I I I I I I
The second
Image RampOP Image Base Image Shutter Image N_Plasma_P7
⊕ ···      ⊕ Base     ⊕ ···      ⊕ Shutter     ⊕ ···      ⊕ N_Plasma_P7     ⊕ ···      ⊕ ···      ⊕ ···      ⊕ ···
⊕ Shutter     ⊕ N_Plasma_P7     G_1 ABNGAP5 D0
M_Plasma_P7
🕀 📲 C_CBr4_LTT_P9 🚽
Setpoint when ramping SP
Mode Linear (Ramp) Tayer duration
Value or formula
720 🛃
Add

Change the temperature setpoint of a controller using a ramp.

The screenshot bellow shows a temperature linear ramp with a final setpoint at 720°C. The controller is assumed to be in temperature control mode (AUTO).

The duration of the ramp is equal to the duration of the layer in which the action is located.

You can change the mode to Step or if it exists, to another ramp profile. You must define other ramp profiles in the **options** for them to appear here.

**Step mode** means that the desired setpoint will be sent directly to the controller. In this case, the regulator will go as quickly as possible to reach the final setpoint.

In ramp mode, Crystal XE will periodically send a new setpoint to the temperature controller following the type of ramp selected.

The frequency of sending the setpoint to the regulator is defined in the setup of the sub equipment (go in the Equipment view select the temperature sub equipment and click on the setup button located in the bottom of the details view)

Setup As_VAC500_P1 [Cracker_Z	[2] ×
OP and SetPoint Limits           Min SP         Max SP           0         °C         1050         °C           Min OP         Max OP         0         %         75         %	Max slope SP 1000 °C/min Max slope OP 100 %/min
Regulation parameters         P       I       D         0       %0       \$0       \$         CB low       CB high       C       0       °C	Auto tunning Limits Min OP Max OP 0 %0 %
Ramp parameters Disable step in AUTO Disable step in MANUAL	Ramp refresh rate OP SP 1.0 ₅ 1.0 ₅
Close	•

This screenshot shows how to change the period to send setpoint when ramping.

By default, the period is one second and it is not recommended to change it.

#### Start ramps on "Measured value" or "Current setpoint"?

When two ramps follow one another, Crystal will start the second ramp from the measured value or from the last setpoint sent. This choice can be changed in the Crystal options. (Setup / Options menu, general tab and Ramps group)

Others ramp param	eter	S:
Setpoint when ramping	SP	
Mode Linear (Ramp)	-	Layer duration
Value or formula		Slope (x/min)
723		Custom duration

This screenshot shows all the different slopes

### By entering a value for the slope:

Mode Linear (Ramp)	▼ Slope (x/i	min) 🔻 1	
Value or formula			
723			Ŀ.
Add			

Enter a slope value

Select "Slope (x/min)" if you want to enter a slope. In this case, the duration of the ramp can either be less than the duration of the layer, or be greater than the duration of the layer and it can even continue when the recipe is finished.

#### By entering a custom duration:

Mode Linear (Ramp)	▼ Custom duration ▼	00:00:12.000
Value or formula		
723		1

Enter a ramp duration

In this case, you are free to enter the duration of the ramp. The slope will be calculated automatically.

### 12.11. Using tag or properties (like global variables)

. 1º

It is also possible to add a tag by using the data explorer button

Layer duration

Open the recipe data explorer to add a tag property

This function is available wherever this button is present, such as the layer duration or the temperature setpoint, etc.

Pressing on this button open the data explorer:

Data explorer	
File	
	1 4
Properties Functions	
C21DZ App App Batch Call StandardTime Call Sta	
App.Var.StandardTime	
9086 items	Ok Cancel

Recipe data explorer that displays a global variable

Select the data you want to insert and press OK. The data will be inserted at the cursor position.

Example of layer duration with a global variable:



When using a global variable, the duration of the layer can be changed during the execution of the recipe by using a background script or by an Indicator in an HMI form (Human Man Interface)

Example of global variable used as a setpoint:

Properties Generated script Charts
No condition
Layer duration (MydurationFunction*1000)+App.Var.offset_ms
Comment MyFunction
Background color
[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all
E- 🖏 C21DZ 🔺
🚊 🧐 As_VAC500_P1 📃
🗐 🤴 Cracker_Z2
121 RegMode
121 P
121 I
RampSP
III RampOP
🕀 🤴 Reservoir_Z1
E Shutter
±
E ALADROOD D C
E Gal ABN60DE P8
Setpoint when ramping SP
Mode Linear (Ramp) 💌 Layer duration 💌
Value or formula
App.Var.MyTempSP
Add

It is also possible to enter a formula.

Example of formula: (App.Var.StandardTime\*1000)+App.var.offset

Layer duration (App.Var.StandardTime\*1000)+App.Var.offset\_ms

When using a formula, all math functions which are available in the scripts are allowed, and parentheses are also allowed. For more details, see the documentation about the scripts.

### 12.12. Using of an external script library

You can use one or more external libraries containing custom functions.

The result of these function can be entered in the calculation of the duration of a layer or as the setpoint value of a temperature regulator, or valve position etc...

For example, create a script file with the name myLibrary.pas.

To create a new library, in the main menu of Crystal, select New script. Write the following script and save the file as "MyLibrary.pas".



Pascal script editor

Go back to the recipe editor, click on the main item and enter the name of your library:

Main recipe editor [RHVP 63 TEST QCS.rcp]						•••
File Edit View						
📄 📂 📝 🛝 🔟 🖏 🖬 Offsets G.Rates Var						
[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all	Properties Ge	nerated script Charts			_	
Script (len=73) - Initialize QCS template	General				🗹 Show map 🗹 Show lin	es 🗹 Substrate on top
01:00:00:00:00-START-Layer duration= 1 sec	Title			]	SUBSTRATE	00:00:00.000
H = 02:00:00:01.000- PALLER PING- Layer duration = 4 min	Type					
04:00:04:02.000- STAND BY PING- Layer duration= 10 min	Author					
Script (len=156) - Initial measurement (R1)	Company			]	UP	
O6:00:14:03.000-PALIER PING OFF-Layer duration=1 sec	Comments					
07:00: 14:04.000- UP- Layer duration = 6 hour						
Script (len=181) - Measurement after 100 minutes at 32 W (R2)					STAND BY 1h	
09:07:14:04.000- STAND BY 6h-Layer duration = 6 hour						
Script (len=172) - Measurement after 9h at 32 W (R3)		7				
11:13:14:05.000- DOWN- Layer duration= 6 hour	Creation: (	3/08/2022 10:55:49			STAND BY 6h	
12:19:14:05.000- PING FIN- Layer duration = 4 min 13:19:18:05.000 Layer duration = 0 sec	Script librari	es (file names used senar:	ated by comman	po space)		
14:19:18:05.000- PALIER FIN- Layer duration= 1 hour 30 min		🥖 👻	ated by commas,	no spacej		
Script (len=174) - Final measurement (R4)		2 C				
Script (len=20) - Close the template		epport	d badrara und uibe			
	Menou	ck scripts write typing (re		areno.		
		E E E			DOWN	
	Ren	te report nie ort also lavers in loons				
					PALIER FIN	
					L Total= 20:48:05.000 - 15	layers -
Detach						
			1	2 ALIM	3	
			0	ViewportHeater	C 10	
Script (len=73) Initialize QCS template	Duration	Inickness Material	StartHigh	StopRamp	CoolDown	
01 00:00:00.000 START 02 00:00:01.000 PALIER PING	1 sec		ON			
03 00:04:01.000 STOP RAMP ON	1 sec			ON		
						Ok Cancel

Enter the pascal library file name

Several library files can be used. In this case, each file name must be separated by a comma.

Uncheck the box "Auto check scripts while typing ..." only if the refresh takes too long.

Then, select the current layer and you can add a formula that contains the function that is in the library:



Duration of the layer composed of a formula which uses a script function.

# 12.13. Use of local variables

It is possible to use local variables which are only available in the recipe.

When the user starts to execute the recipe, Crystal XE will ask to enter the values of the variables that will be used in the recipe.

First, you must create the local variables.

Click on the "Var" button located in the tool bar.



Var button to open the local variables editor.

This button will open the local variable editor:

XE V	Variables used in recipe							
	😂 Open 🔛 Save as 🕇 Move Up 👃 Move Down 🔚 Insert row 🗙 Delete 😨 Delete all							
	User Name	Comment	Min	Max	Value			
	AlTempSP	Temperature setpoint for aluminium cell	650	800	700			
	LayerDurations	Standard layer duration (minutes)	1	45	5			
						Cancel		

Local variables editor.

You can define as many variables as you want.

For each variable, you must enter comment, a range in which the user can enter the value and a default value which will be displayed when the recipe is executed.

These variables can be used for the durations of the layers, or for the instructions that are sent to the regulators.



Example of a local variables used in the calculation of a layer duration.

When the user launches the recipe, Crystal will ask him to enter the content of the local variables.

XË V	/ariables used in	ı recipe			
Che	eck the above data	a and press the OK button			
	User Name	Comment	Min	Max	Value
	AlTempSP	Temperature setpoint for aluminium cell	650	800	700
2	LayerDurations	Standard layer duration (minutes)	1	45	5
2	LayerDurations	Standard layer duration (minutes)	1	Start	Close
					Close

Example of a local variables requested to the user when launching the recipe.

The user can change the value of the variables and push on the start button to start the recipe. The window will remain open during the execution of the recipe to allow the user to modify the variable if necessary. Any changes will be considered instantly.

### 12.14. Loops

Loops are useful to repeat a list of top-level elements. Several loops can be nested. It is also possible to add a ramp in the beginning of the loop, outside a layer, to have a ramp whose final set point is at the end of the loop.

Main recipe editor [HEMT growth.rcp]	
File Edit View	
[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all	Properties Generated script Charts
Sub recipe GaAs deoxidation.rcp-Deoxidation-Duration= 0 sec	No condition
06:00:00:00.000- buffer growth 10min- Layer duration= 10 m     Ga2_ABI85_P11     Ga1_Shutter_Control = OPEN	Iteration number 25
🗗 💭 Do 25- 25x GaAs/AlGaAs- Duration = 25 m 🛛 💀 🚱 💓 🗱	User information 25x GaAs/AlGaAs
H=         01:00:10:00.000Layer duration= 30 s           H=         02:00:10:30.000Layer duration= 30 s	Background color     Select color     Same color in the loop

Example of loop in a recipe.

- Right-click and select Add/loop or Insert/loop.
- Select the Iteration number
- You can add a temperature ramp inside the loop but outside a layer in the case you want to make a ramp while the loop time.

1000 °C		Temperatur	e SP (SetPoint)			
1000		/		<u></u>		
900-	**********			<u></u> Δ		
800-						
700 -						
600		X				
800-						
500-	433333333333333	******				
400-						
300-						
200-						
200						
100 -						
0- 00:00:00	00:16:40	00:33:20	00:50:00	01:06:40	01:23:20	Time

### Example of a temperature ramp during the loop time (black curve)

# 12.15. Conditional layers

We call this feature "conditional layers" but it also applies to all the steps such as sub-recipes, the loop and the pause.

#### Since Crystal XE version 1.06, it is possible to create conditional layers.

In other words, it is possible to add a condition to execute or not execute a step. This condition can also be set to **wait for an event**.

The condition can be applied on

- A layer
- A loop
- A pause
- A sub-recipe

Main recipe editor [test.rcp]									- • ×
File Edit View									
1 🐸 🖬 🖻 🕂 🗑 🖬 🖬									
[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all	Properties Generate	d script Charts							
Among			of the state	115	✓ Show ma	p ✓ Show lines ✓ Subs	trate on top		
	Conditionnal item	▼ Pr	ocess if condition is true 🔻		SI	JBSTRATE			
- Teil Shutter.Control = CLOSE	Enter condition bello	w (Ex: App.Var.N	4yVar<200)				00:00:02.000		
Cracker_Tip_Z2.RegMode = Auto	QueryYesNo('Do	QueryYesNo('Do you want to execute this layer ?')							
Reservoir_Evaporator_Z1.RegMode = Auto									
E- 2:00:00:02.000- First layer (conditionnal)- La 🛶 🎓 😜 🕷									
	Layer duration 00	:05:00.000							
+									
-C > Do 2-Loop here-Duration = 22 s		the former and the	D	- 11					
01:00:06:02.000- Layer 1 in loop- Layer duration= 5 s	Comment Fr	st layer (condition	nnai)	-11					
⊕ 02:00:06:07.000- Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:06:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop- Layer 2 iin loop- Layer duration = 6 s     ☐ 02:00:07.000 - Layer 2 iin loop-									
	Background color								
	Select events to add	to this layer			First lay	er (conditionnal)			
	- 61 6	RampSP							
		RampOP							
	🖻 😕 Rese	rvoir_Evaporator	_Z1						
		RegMode							
				=					
		0							
	- <u>e</u>	RampSP							
		RampOP							
	🗐 😗 Shut	ter		×					
						auna (ann ditional)			
					second i	ayer (conditional)			
						30.6			
						50.3			
				E					
	Apply				Er	nd of recipe			
(					Total= 00:	06:54.000 - 9 lavers			
Detach	1	2	3		4	5	6		7
		-		Mg	_VCOR 300	P2			
# Jours Description Duration Thiduces Mate	vial D	т	Cracker_Tip_Z2	0-	oMede	Reservoir_	Evaporator_Z1	S	hutter
01 00:00:00.000 Initialization 2 s		1	Rampor	Ker	Auto	Rampor	Auto		CLOSE
02 00:00:02.000 First layer (conditionnal) 5 m	21								
03 00:05:02.000 second layer (conditional) 30 s		3							OPEN
DO 2 Loop here									
01 00:06:02.000 Layer 1 in loop 5 s M	2		600 (linear while layer time)						
02 00:06:07.000 Layer 2 in loop 6 s M						700 (linear while layer tim	e)		
09 00:06:24.000 End of recipe 30 s M	9								
								Ok	Cancel

Example of recipe using conditional layers, they are identify by the yellow color.

Image: State of the state	
[+] Expand all       [-] Collapse all         Main [HEMT growth.rcp] Duration= 1 h 3 m 16 s         Sub recipe GaAs deoxidation.rcp- Deoxidation- Duration= 0 sec         0 66:00:00:00:00.000- buffer growth 10min- Layer 0 2 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3	Properties Generated script Charts       Conditional item     Waiting for the condition       Enter condition bellow (Ex: App.Var.MyVar<200)       Manipulator.Temperature.MV<500       <
Turn on the conditional item.	

Two modes are possible:

- "Process if condition is true" means the step will be executed only if the result of the condition is true (or different of zero) otherwise, the step will be skipped, and the next step will be executed.
- **"Waiting for the condition"** means the step will be executed only once the result of the condition will be true (or different of zero)

In the condition area, right-click and select "Insert from data explorer" to add a tag in the editor.

The condition can also be the result of a script function (A script file must be indicated in the main item).

#### How to enter a conditional event?

Example of conditional recipe:



A conditional step (layer, loop, pause or sub-recipe) is identified by a yellow mark. In the tree view, there is a yellow icon, in the grid with the first cell of the line is yellow and in the map view, a vertical yellow margin indicates that the step is a conditional layer.

To define a new condition, click on a step and then select "Conditional item" in the combo box - see the red rectangle in the next picture:

Kin Main recipe editor [test.rcp]	
File Edit View	
🗋 💕 🛃 🛍 📋 수 🐺 🖽 🖙	
[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all	Properties Generated script Charts
Main [test.rcp] Duration= 1 m 14 s	
E== 0100000000-000- intellatation-Layer duration= (↓●) ♥」 ♥」 ♥」 =	No condition
121 Cracker_Tip_Z2.RegMode = Auto 121 Reservoir_Evaporator_Z1.RegMode = Auto	
E	Comment Initialization

When the conditional item is selected, the following options are available:

Properties	s Generated script Charts	
Conditio	tional item	Je 🔻
2 Enter cor	ondition bellow (Ex: App.Var.MyVar<200)	

You can select either "Process if condition is true" or "Wait until condition is true"

Condition		
Conditio	nalitem	Process in condition is true
Enter cond	dition bellow (Ex: A	App. Va Wait until condition is true

In the condition editor, you can enter any formula or condition that returns zero or a value other than zero.

The condition will be **false** if the condition returns **zero**, otherwise the condition will be **true**.

The following conditions are available:

- A simple comparison using standard comparison instructions used in Pascal (see pascal language in the user manual), example: "*GrowthPressure.pressure.MV<1E07*" (The sign "<>" can be used to test if the values are different.)

To insert a tag, right click in the condition area and select "Insert from data explorer"

Main recipe editor [test.rcp]	
File Edit View	
_] 🐸 🛃 🛍 🖻 ÷ 🗑 박 딱	
[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all	Properties Generated script Charts
Main [test.rcp] Duration= 1 m 14 s	
🗄 🗔 📀 01:00:00:00.000- Initialization- Layer duration 🛶 🎓 😜 🞇	Conditional item   Process if condition is true
+ 02:00:00:02.000- Second layer (conditionnal: confirmation)- La	Fater and the ballow (For Ann Mar Mar) (2000)
+	Phter condition bellow (ex: App.var.Myvar<200)
+ 04:00:00:42.000- Layer 4, no condition- Layer duration= 5 s	Insert from data explorer
Do 2- Loop here only if user reply YES- Duration = 22 s	
+ 09:00:01:09.000- Last layer in progress- Layer duration= 5 s	

Select the tag in the data explorer



Press OK to insert the selected tag into the condition area.

#### Then, enter a condition



- You can use the result of a script function like "QueryYesNo('message')"
- The result of a user defined function. In that case you must select the script file to use. Click in the main item of the tree view and select the file names used in the group "Script libraries" (see the screen copy bellow)

Main recipe editor [test.rcp]	
File Edit View	
[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all	Properties Generated script Charts
Main [test.rcp] Duration= 1 m 14 s Olicoursion.cover addresses 02:00:00:00:000-Second layer (conditional al: confirmation)-Layer 03:00:00:12:000-Third layer (conditional al: temp>700)-Layer 04:00:00:42:000-Layer 4, no condition-Layer duration= 5 s 04:00:00:42:000-Layer 4, no condition-Layer duration= 5 s 09:00:01:09:000-Last layer in progress-Layer duration= 5 s	General Title Mon titre préféré Type TEST Author FCLEMENT Company RIBER Comments Essai de commentaire Ligne 2 Ligne 3
	Creation: 20/10/2017 08:52:16  Creation: 20/10/2017 08:52:16  File names used (separated by commas).  MyFunctions.pas  ✓ Auto check scripts while typing (red background when error)

Then you can use all the functions that you have defined in the library.

#### Execute a conditional recipe

When a condition is true, no change will be displayed in the recipe log.

When a condition is false, the following message will be displayed in the recipe log: *"Condition is false, step skipped (followed by the comment of the item)"* 

#### Example of recipe log:

Layer	Date / Time	•	Description
0001	20/10/2017	11:30:36,491	Initialization
00021	20/10/2017	11:30:51,687	Second layer (conditionnal: confirmation)
1	20/10/2017	11:31:01,687	Condition is false, step skipped (Third layer (conditional al temp>700))
00031	20/10/2017	11:31:01,687	Layer 4, no condition
1	20/10/2017	11:31:10,394	Condition is false, loop skipped Loop here only if user reply YES
00041	20/10/2017	11:31:10,396	Last layer in progress
1		11:31:16,254	> Completed

### 12.16. Modify a value with repercussions in the other layers

When modifying a value in a recipe, an option may appear next to the "Apply" button.

Setpoint w	RampSP RampOP Ramping SP	- -
Mode Linea Value or for	r (Ramp) 🔹 Layer	duration 🔻
340 Apply	Individual	

This screenshot shows the options to make a change in all the recipe.

#### Several options are possibles:



- Individual: Only this action will be changed.
- **Same tags & value**: all the tags value of the same equipment and sub-equipment with the same name and same value will be replaced by the new value.
- **Same tags:** all the tags value of the same equipment and sub-equipment with the same name will be replaced by the new value.
- **Same tags by offset:** all the tags value of the same equipment and sub-equipment with the same name will be changed by the same offset. By example if the previous value was 200 and the new value is 245, then all the tag values will be increase of 45.

# 12.17. Offsets

From the menu, select Edit / Edit offsets or click on the tool bar on Offsets.

	1		iti,	Ĩ	*:‡	* <del>,</del>	Offsets	G.Rates	Var	
--	---	--	------	---	-----	----------------	---------	---------	-----	--

This will open the following window:

XE Offset editor		
1		
Equipment	Sub equipment	Offset
As_VAC500_P1	Cracker_Z2	0
	Reservoir_Z1	0
	Condenser_Transfer_Z3	0
	valve_NVC6000	0
P_KPC250_P2	Cracker_Z2	0
	Reservoir_Z1	0
	Condenser_Transfer_Z3	0
	Valve_NVC6000	0
Si_ABN135D_P3	Temperature	0
Be_ABN135D_P4	Temperature	0
C_C_cell_P5	Temperature	0
AI_ABN60DF_P6	Tip	0
	Base	0
Ga1_ABN60DF_P8	Tip	0
	Base	0
C_CBr4_LTI_P9	Temperature	0
In1_ABI85_P10	Insert	0
	Base	0
Ga2_ABI85_P11	Insert	0
	Base	0
Sb_VCor300_P12	Cracker_Z2	0
	Reservoir_Z1	0
	Condenser_Transfer_Z3	0
	valve_NVC6000	0
Manipulator	Temperature	0
BakeOut	temperature	0
Wafer_temperature	TC	0
	Pyro	0
AS_P121	temperature	0
	Ok	Cancel

Offsets window

All equipment that has a tag called "Offset" is listed here.

This is useful in the case where the material decreases in a cell and you do not want to modify the recipe. In this case Crystal will compensate for the loss of materials by a rise in temperature of the cell. This elevation results in an offset that you can enter in this table.

#### Any offset values you enter here are taken into account instantly throughout Crystal XE.

The offset values are not saved in the recipe, so by loading a recipe, the offsets will not be modified a second time.

The offsets are automatically saved by Crystal when closing it. The offsets are automatically loaded when opening Crystal.

In the equipment view, all the offsets are displayed in one column and also in the detail view.

RYSTAL XE 64 bitsDEMO_C21DZ - Version 2.03 bui	ld GBET	A 4 ***********	Simulation mod	e: communi	cation disab	oled *********	***		
File View Recipe Tools Editors Setup Window Help									
C21 DZ SYSdem	0								
Main 🗟 Loading 🗟 Degas_chamber 🗟 C21DZ 🗟	Parking	Chamber 5							
🥞 Equipment 🔔 Security 👗 Recipe	8	Charts 🔡 R	ecorder [ <u>]]h</u>	Statistics	Dev	vices			
As_VAC500_P1 Cracker_Z2 Reservoir_Z1 Shutter ( )	2	As_VAC500_P1	Cracker_Z2 Reservoir_Z1 Shutter Valve_AVP6504	rc k P⊂ k ©	IV 787.67 IV 285.43 Closed	CSP 787.63 CSP 285.17 OK	Off TSP 100.00 Off TSP 0.00	Offs <mark>23.00</mark> Offs <u>0.00</u>	
787.63         787.67         0         1050           Current TSP         Target SP         Offset         23           787.63         100.00         Slope         Slope	۵.	P_KPC250_P2	Cracker_Z2 Reservoir_Z1 Shutter Valve_NVC6000	ic h ic h V P	IV 750.03 IV 292.57 Closed los 0.00	CSP 750.03 CSP 292.50 OK	Off TSP 500.00 Off TSP 0.00 Off TOP 0.00	Offs 0.00 Offs 0.00 % Offs 0.00 %	INIT
Off Linear T 10 °C/min	<u>۹</u>	Si_ABN135D_P3	Temperature Shutter	۱ ۲۰	IV 1012.80 Closed	CSP 1012.63 OK	Off TSP 300.00	Offs 0.00	
Regulation mode Auto	<b>.</b>	Be_ABN135D_P4	Temperature Shutter	<b>, "</b> ⊂ N <b>™</b>	IV 663.98 Closed	CSP 663.75 OK	Off TSP 300.00	Offs 0.00	
MANUAL - Power settings (%)	÷.	C_C_cell_P5	Temperature Shutter	 ▽	IV 1500.17 Closed	CSP 1500.03 OK	Off TSP 0.00	Offs 0.00	
OP 7.00 2 75 2 Current TOP Target OP 0 2	۹.	AI_ABN60DF_P6	Tip Base Shutter	ic h ic h	IV 270.10 IV 307.53 Closed	CSP 0.00 CSP 0.00 OK	Off TSP 0.00 Off TSP 0.00	Offs <u>0.00</u> Offs <u>0.00</u>	
Off Step V/min	•	Ga1_ABN60DF_P8	Tip Base Shutter	1 <sup>°C</sup> N 1 <sup>°C</sup> N 1 <sup>°C</sup> N	IV 787.67 IV 694.25 Closed	CSP 787.63 CSP 694.02 OK	Off TSP 0.00 Off TSP 0.00	Offs 0.00 Offs 0.00	
	۰	C_CBr4_LTI_P9	Temperature Shutter		IV 225.17 Closed	CSP 225.00	Off TSP 0.00	Offs 0.00	
	2	In1_ABI85_P10	Insert Base Shutter	rc n rc n v	IV 682.87 IV 570.47 Closed	CSP 682.70 CSP 570.20 OK	Off TSP 0.00 Off TSP 0.00	Offs 0.00 Offs 0.00	
	<u>_</u>	Ga2_ABI85_P11	Insert Base Shutter	rc 1 7 7	IV 750.20 IV 652.77 Closed	CSP 750.10 CSP 652.50 OK	Off TSP 310.00 Off TSP 210.00	Offs 0.00 Offs 0.00	
	2	Sb_VCor300_P12	Cracker_Z2 Reservoir_Z1 Shutter Valve_AVP6504		//∨ 750.33 //∨ 375.30 Closed	CSP 750.27 CSP 375.03 OK	Off TSP 0.00 Off TSP 0.00	Offs 0.00 Offs 0.00	
		Growth	Pressure	P 1	IV 1.40E-05	9			
	۵	Manipulator	Main_shutter Rotation_basic BEP Flux_motorization Temperature		Closed Stop IV 1.20E-05 Parked IV 615.10	CSP 0.00 Go Flux CSP 615.03	TSP 0.00 Off TSP 400.00	Offs 0.00	
Setup Inspect Help	-	BakeOut	hakaout	BAKE OUT IFC	t <mark>0.00 m</mark>	in P 0.00E-1	OFF Step 0.00		

Offsets in the equipment view

When changing an offset, all the setpoints that are sent to the device will be increased or decreased (if negative value) by the value of the offset. This is valid for step modes but also for ramps, even if they are running.

# 12.18. Search and replace

From the menu, select Edit / Search and replace, or in the tool bar, click on the button

This will open this window:

Search equipment and replace				
Search and Only equip	l replace equipment by another one. ment with same type of sub-equipment can be repl	aced		
Search	Si_ABN135D_P3			
Replace by	Be_ABN135D_P4			
	Replace Can	cel		

Search and replace window

This tool is useful to replace a cell by another one. For example, when you have several Ga cell in your system and you have written your recipe with the cell Ga1, you can easily change the cell Ga1 by Ga2 using this tool.

# 12.19. Work in thickness

Rather than entering durations for the layers, you can choose to enter layer thicknesses. In this case you must define in a table the growth rate for each of the cells. In the tool bar of the recipe editor, click on the button "G.Rates"

File Edit View	G.Rates Var		
[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all	XE Growth rate e	editor	× ar
Main [test.rcp] Duration= 14 sec     O1:00:00:00.000 Layer duration= 4 sec	📄 📂 🔛 🕐 M	lodified	
🖶 🧠 As_VAC500_P1	Equipment	GrowthRate (µm/h)	
D P_KPC250_P2	As_VAC500_P1	45	
├─ <u>─</u> Script (len=32) -	P_KPC250_P2	25	
□-C Do 2 Duration= 10 sec	Si_ABN135D_P3	23	
01:00:00:04.000 Layer duration = 3 sec	Be_ABN135D_P4	22	
02:00:07:000Layer duration= 2 sec	C_C_cell_P5	10	
	AI_ABN60DF_P6	25	
	Ga1_ABN60DF_P8	23	
	In1_ABI85_P10	21	
	Ga2_ABI85_P11	21	
	Sb_VCor300_P12	23	
	AS_P121	25	
		Ok Cancel	

Click on the G.Rates button to display the growth rate editor.

The growth rate editor allows you to export or import a growth rate file. The file format is text, and the extension is .ini. Example of growth file:

```
[GrowthRate]
C21DZ.As_VAC500_P1=45
C21DZ.P_KPC250_P2=25
C21DZ.Si_ABN135D_P3=23
C21DZ.Be_ABN135D_P4=22
C21DZ.C_C_cel1_P5=10
```

```
C21DZ.A1_ABN60DF_P6=25
C21DZ.Ga1_ABN60DF_P8=23
C21DZ.In1_ABI85_P10=21
C21DZ.Ga2_ABI85_P11=21
C21DZ.Sb_VCor300_P12=23
C21DZ.AS_P121=25
```

**Important:** The growth rate data are only available in the current recipe. It is saved in the recipe file (.rcp)

Once you have entered growth rates for each cell, you can start entering thicknesses for each layer.



Example to enter a thickness.

Of course, to be able to enter a thickness, the other condition is that at least **one shutter must be open**. In that case the duration of the layer is automatically calculated.

In the resulting script, the layer thickness is a constant duration. So, the growth rate cannot be changed during the execution of the recipe.

If you change the growth rate values, all the durations of the recipe will be automatically recalculated.

The thickness of all layers	is display in the column	Thickness in the grid view:

Γ.						1	2	3
						As_VAC500_P1		P_KPC250_P2
						Shutter	Shutter	Cracker_Z2
#	Layer	Description	Duration	Thickness	Material	Control	Control	RampSP
01	00:00:00.000		44 min 20 sec 870 ms	34,00	Р	CLOSE	OPEN	
	Script (len=32)				_			
	DO 2				-			
01	00:44:20.870		0 sec		As	OPEN	CLOSE	123 (linear while layer time)
02	00:44:20.870		0 sec		As			
	END LOOP				-			

Overview of all the layers thickness in the grid view

#### Compute duration or compute thickness?

You can choose either to enter a thickness and in this case to display a duration for the layer, or to enter a duration and in this case, to display the resulting thickness. To choose which operating mode you want, click on the combo box in the toolbar to choose either "compute duration" or "computer thickness"
CRYSTAL XE 64 bits	_DEMO_C21DZ - Version 2.03 build 6BETA 4 ************ Simulation	n mode: communication disa
File View Recipe Tools	Editors Setup Window Help	
	XE Main recipe editor [test.rcp]	
. 🖉 siyu	File Edit View	
🌆 Main 🗊 Loading 🗐	🗋 📂 🔛 🛍 🔟 🐮 🏋 Offsets G.Rates Var	Compute thickness
4 Equipment 🔔	[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all	Compute duration Compute thickness

Combo box to select either the Compute duration option or the Compute thickness option.

# 12.20. Script tab

Click on the Script tab to display the recipe's script.

This script is automatically generated by the recipe editor. It is not possible to modify it. If you want to edit a recipe using the Script editor, use this tab to copy the script and paste it in the script editor.



Example of a script automatically generated by the recipe editor.

Click on the Check button to check the script.

Normally, there should never be an error in a script that has been automatically generated. However, this can happen if a global variable which is used in the recipe has been modified or has disappeared or if you made a mistake while entering a script that is used as an element in the recipe, etc.

When you save the recipe or when you click the OK button to close the recipe, a check is also systematically made.

If an error occurred, Crystal indicates where the error is in the script.

Click on the button "Save script as..." to export the script into a pascal file. This can be a good start to begin a new script recipe.

# 12.21. Chart view

The chart view display the evolution of the temperature setpoint, output power, shutters status etc... in function of time and during all the recipe time.

	400 °C	1.00	Тетр	erature SP (SetPoint)					Manipulator.Temperature.RampSP
Temperature SP									Manipulator.Rotation_basic.Rotation_SP
Output power	350-								
Shutters									
	300 -								
Pressure	250 -								
Valve pos.									
Filon	200 -								
Others	199								
Show dots	100-								
Show Legend									
	50-								
				<u> </u>		4			
		_		Shutters					SI_ABN135D_P3.Shutter.Control
									C_C_cell_P5.Shutter.Control
									Ga1_ABN60DF_P8.Shutter.Control
	<u>.</u>			*		<b>k</b>			In1_ABI85_P10.Shutter.Control
	<u>a</u>	<u>4</u>							Sb_VCor300_P12.Shutter.Control
		<u>^</u>				<u>,</u>			Manipulator.Main_shutter.Control
	s	Δ.			ļ				
	<u>.</u>	•••••••							
	<u>a</u>	<del>*</del>		*		2			
	2	*							
	<u>x</u>			d	,	4			
	00:00:00	00:01:40 0	0:03:20 00:	05:00 00:0	06:40 00:0	18:20	00:10:00	00:11:40	
								Tim	

Example of a charts view

This is useful to check if everything is good before to execute the recipe.

By right-clicking on a graph, you can export the graphs in different formats, change the display, print, copy to the clipboard, etc.

In the left panel, you can select which chart to display.



The use of the italic font indicates that no point is present in this graph.

# 12.22. Script recipe editor

Click on "*New recipe*" and "*New script (advanced mode)*" located in the top left-hand corner of the recipe interface, to open the *Script editor*.



Use the *Script editor* to create a recipe using Pascal programming language. The created recipe is saved as a *'.pas'* file.

### How to write the layers ?

Remember that a layer is determined by a list of actions to be performed and a time to wait. Then you must therefore write all your actions like for example, to activate a cache, write "Growth.As\_VAC500\_P1.Shutter.Control:=1;" and terminate by a time to wait, but for the layers, you must use the Layer instruction. For example, write Layer('My first layer',3000); to make a layer with a duration of 3 seconds.

A good solution to start a new recipe in script is to write it using the recipe editor, to export the script which was automatically generated and to edit this script.

⇒ For more information about the scripts, see the scripts section, later in this manual.

### 12.23. Convert recipe CSV to RCP

Crystal XE CSV converter allows to convert recipe files saved as Comma-separated Values (CSV) format, edited with spreadsheet program like Excel, or exported from older version of Crystal software, to compatible Crystal XE .RCP files.

#### How to create a new CSV file:

To create your recipe from your favorite spreadsheet, it is necessary to create a file template. Launch the Crystal XE recipe editor: Go to the growth chamber tab, then to the Recipe tab and Click on the "New recipe" button. From the recipe editor, go to the File / Create CSV template menu. A template will be created in the Recipe folder of the chamber concerned.

#### To convert old Crystal Eyes recipes to Crystal XE, here we outline two methods:

- The first one is to export old "Crystal Eyes" recipes to CSV files,
- The second is to use the internal converter that convert directly old .RCP files to Crystal XE .RCP files (see the next chapter).

# 12.24. Export old "Crystal Eyes" recipes to CSV files

Recipes that have been edited with the **version 7.7.SP9** of Crystal Eyes software must be exported as CSV files prior to be converted to *Crystal XE* recipe files.

# You need the version 7.7.SP9 of Crystal Eyes to perform the export. If you have an older version of Crystal Eyes, you must install Crystal 7.7 SP9, all older recipe files are readable from Crystal 7.7SP9.

1 From the Crystal Tool bar, launch the Schedule program



2. Open the desired recipe file

The recipe **must not** include *Sub recipe* or *Pause*. If so, you must delete all *Sub recipes* or *Pauses* prior to convert the recipe.

On the menu bar, select File > Export excel file to Crystal converter. The recipe is exported as a CSV file.

3. Create a directory to which you will save all your exported files (recommended).

# 12.25. Convert CSV files from Crystal XE

1 On the menu bar of Crystal XE, select Recipe > Convert CSV recipes to Crystal XE RCP files (per batch) File View Recipe Tools Editors Setup Debug Window CrystalXE.com Help



1. Select the CSV files directory → 2. Select the →	Import CSV r File 1) Select the directory 2) Press the conversion 3) If needed, fill be table Select directory Recette 1_Old Crystal.cs Recette 2_old Crystal.cs	Select the chamber and press of an the conversion Chamber name [C21DZ	button.	€ 4. Co € 6. Co	onvert onvert agai	Destination directory S necetie 2, old Crystal.rcp
CSV file(s)		Clear the table % Delete old Equipment name Substrate Add3 Gaz Line Ph3 Gaz Line Ph3 Gaz Line Ph3 Gaz Line Add3 state Ready Add3 State Ready Add3 State Ready Add3 State Ready Colleman Substrate Gallum 2 Indum 3 4	do di sub equipment name Stutter Valve Valve Stutter Stutter Stutter Flow Temp Base, temperature Base, temperature Base, temperature	Reset fil the following com New Easymetrame Manpulator Match th	e items items e items ,	
	Reading file C:\Temp\CSV_ Error in line 11 event was i Error in line 11 event was i	converter Recette2_old_Cryst not found Substrate.Rotation.R not found AsH3 Gaz Line.Valve.R not found Ph3 Gaz Line.Valve.R not found Ph3 state ready.Shut not found AsH3 state Ready.Sh	al.csv ampSP RampOP ampOP ter.Control utter.Control			Close

Crystal XE CSV converter

4. Select the directory to which the CSV files have been saved.

5. From the directory file list, select on or several file to convert:



If new CSV files have been added to the directory, click on the following icon to refresh the list.

6. Select the chamber within which the recipe will be executed using the drop-down list:



7. Click on Convert selected files:



In the dialog box, select the directory to which the converted files will be saved.

When you first convert the CSV file(s), some equipment and sub equipment **names** (identifiers) of your older version of Crystal may not correspond to *Crystal XE* names.

Equipment and sub equipment with no corresponding names in *Crystal XE* are listed in a **conversion table**:

Clear the table 🛛 🗱 Delet	e row	Please fill the following conversion table			
Old Equipment name	Old Sub equipment name	New Equipment name	New Sub equipment name		
Substrate	ubstrate Rotation				
Substrate	Shutter				
AsH3 Gaz Line	Valve				
Ph3 Gaz Line	Valve				
Ph3 state ready	Shutter				

A history of conversion errors is located at the bottom of the window:

Reading file C:\Temp\CSV_converter\Recette2_old_Crystal.csv
Error in line 11 event was not found Substrate.Rotation.RampSP
Error in line 11 event was not found Substrate.Shutter.Control
Error in line 11 event was not found AsH3 Gaz Line.Valve.RampOP
Error in line 11 event was not found Ph3 Gaz Line.Valve.RampOP
Error in line 11 event was not found Ph3 state ready.Shutter.Control
Error in line 11 event was not found AsH3 state Ready.Shutter.Control
Error in line 11 event was not found AsH3 PH3 Injector .Shutter.Control
Error in line, 12 quant was not found Dh2 Car Line, Value, DampOD

#### 8. First match the equipment names:

For each line, select the name of the equipment as specified in *Crystal XE* from the drop-down menu: For example, the Substrate in the older version correspond to the Manipulator in Crystal XE

Old Equipment name	Old Sub equipment name	New Equipment name	New Sub equipment name
Substrate	Rotation	Manipulator	
Substrate	Shutter	Manipulator	

Identical fields are filled automatically.

9. Then match the sub equipment names:

For each equipment line, select the corresponding name of the associated sub equipment from the drop-down list:

Old Equipment name	Old Sub equipment name	New Equipment name	New Sub equipment name
Substrate	Shutter	Manipulator	Main_shutter

The drop-down list displays the pieces of sub equipment compatible with the selected equipment.

10. Once you have filled the table, click again on the conversion button:



The files are converted to XML files with '.rcp' extension to the specified directory. You can open, edit and execute the converted recipe in *Crystal XE* as any recipe files. If not all equipment and sub equipment do not match, errors occur. The CSV files can be saved but lines with error are ignored and the tags are not added to the recipe.

### **CSV** File format overview

Section		Des	scription	
Head	Author's name, company etc. Head (all the lines from the beginning of the file up to the line begining by « ;;; » Each column is separated by a coma			
		Column #1	Column #2	
		author	<author's name=""></author's>	
		company	<company's name=""></company's>	
		about	<comments></comments>	
Blank lines	Unlimited number of blank lines			
Equipment names	A line that describe the name of all equipment used in this recipe			
··· ››	Two empty lines			
Events titles	A line that describe all the events used in the recipe. Each event is relative to the equipment described in the section "Equipment names".			
Layers or loops	A line that describe	A line that describe a layer or the beginning of a loop or the end of a loop.		

# 12.26. Convert old Crystal Eyes recipes to Crystal XE recipes

11.On the menu bar, click on Recipe / Convert Old recipe file (....):



To convert old recipe files, you must indicate:

- Select the directory where are located the old recipe files.
- In that directory, select which files to convert.
- Select for which chamber to convert it.
- Select the old configuration file (\*.cfg)
- Press "Convert selected files" and indicate where to create the resulting files.

🗱 Old Crystal Recipe co	onverter					
1) Select or check the direct	tory where are located the old R	ICP files.				
2) In the file list, select one	or several files, then choose th	e appropriate chamber and cor	figuration file.			
3) Press the conversion but						
📂 Select directory 🛛 😚	Chamber name C210	DZ	•			Destination directory 🛛 🗖 😚
_Z51208_test Ga1 manual.	Configuration file 📂 test.o	cfg				Z51208 test Ga1 manual.rcp
Cal-Q1-17.rcp Cal-Q1-17 SANS SQUSREC			_			Cal-Q1-17.rcp
MQW.rcp		Convert selected files				cal-Q1-17_SANS_SOUSRECETTE.r
MQW_SANS_SOUSRECETTE						GaAs deoxidation.rcp
tes_growth.rcp	Clear the table 🛛 🞽 Delete	e row	Please fill the following co	nversion table		HEMT active layers.rcp HEMT growth.rcp
test.rcp test_3sec.rcn	Old Equipment name	Old Sub equipment name	New Equipment name	New Sub equipment name	^	MQW.rcp
test_io.rcp	DoubleEffusionCell-1026	low temperature				MQW_SANS_SOUSRECETTE.rcp
test_regmode.rcp	DoubleEffusionCell-1026	high temperature				tes_growth.rcp
test_unsecure.rcp	Injector-1143	shutter				test - Copie.rcp
test_with_sub.rcp	DigitalEquipment-1157	digital control				test.rcp test 3sec.rcp
testA.rcp thick_test.rcn	DigitalEquipment-1158	digital control				test_4sec.rcp
uwa.rcp	GasLine 7 valves-1147	valves				test_flux.rcp
	GasLine 7 valves-1146	valves				test regmode.rcp
	SimpleSubstrateHolder-1005	shutter				test_thickness.rcp
	SimpleSubstrateHolder-1005	rotation				test_unsecure.rcp test_with_sub.rcn
	GasLine 7 valves-1147	flow control				testA.rcp
	SimpleSubstrateHolder-1005	temperature				thick_test.rcp
	DoubleEffusionCell-1138	high temperature				uwa.rœ
	DoubleEffusionCell-1152	high temperature				
	DoubleEffusionCell-1152	low temperature				
	DoubleEffusionCell-1138	low temperature				
	DoubleEffusionCell-1151	high temperature				
	DoubleEffusionCell-1151	low temperature				
	DoubleEffusionCell-1138	shutter				
	DoubleEffusionCell-1152	shutter				
	GasLine 7 valves-1146	flow control				
	DoubleEffusionCell-1151	shutter				
	MonoEffusionCell-1035	temperature				
	MonoEffusionCell-1111	temperature				
	DoubleEffusionCell-1137	high temperature				
	DoubleEffusionCell-1137	low temperature				
	MonoEffusionCell-1035	shutter			~	
	10 11 5/ · 0 1 4403	11 u				
Reading file C: \riber \cryst	tal_7.7\data_ORG2\recipe\_Z51	208_test Ga1 manual.rcp	ion file			*
Error in line 12 event is un	hknown in the hardware configur	ration DoubleEffusionCell-1026	low temperature.RampSP (N	ame: DoubleEffusionCell-1026.Low	Temperature.RampSP)	
WARNING: Equipment Do	ubleEffusionCell-1026 was not f	ound in the selected configurat	ion file			
						Close

### Press the Start button "Convert selected files"

The converter will try to find the correspondences of names of the equipment and sub-equipment that are used by the recipe. If elements are missing or requests the choice of the user, they will be added to the conversion table.

The red cells of the table must be filled in by the user.

Click on each cell and select the most appropriate item.

When all the red cells are filled in, press the Start button again.

All the converted files will be saved in the indicated folder.

From the Destination directory list, double click on a file to open it.

# **12.27.** Convert Amber recipes to Crystal XE script

### 12.27.1. Preliminary

A special library exists to facilitate recipe conversion.

It's called Amberlib.pas and can be found in the template sub directory in the program folder: "c:\riber\CrystalXE\Template\Script"

This library is automatically added to the recipe file when using the CrystalXE recipe converter (the first line of the generated recipe contains "Uses Amberlib;").

# 12.27.2. Using the Amber recipe converter

You need at least Crystal XE version 3.20 build 8. To start the converter, go in the Crystal XE menu "Recipe" and select the Amber converter.



### Overview of the Amber recipe converter :

🖀 Amber Recipe convert	er	•				000
File						
1) Select or check the direct	tory where are locate	ed the Amber recipe files.				
2) In the file list, select one	or several files, ther	choose the appropriate chamber				
3) Press the conversion but	ton.					
Select directory 41 Test Amber Recipe 1.bt Test Amber Recipe 2.bt	Chamber name	Growth	es		Destination directory Test Amber Recipe 1.pas Test Amber Recipe 2.pas test.pas	<b>11</b>
	Clear the table	🔀 Delete row	Please fill the following conve	rsion table		
	Amber identifier	Context (original)	Crystal XE equivalent			
	Pyro	open Pyro	Manipulator.PyroGeneric_Shutter	1		
	PYRO_V	eval pyrotemp1 = PYRO_V	Manipulator.Pyro.MV			
	subtarget	eval cursubtarget = subtarget	Manipulator.Temp.MV			
	sub	temp sub = newsubtemp	Manipulator.Temp.RampSP			
	prev	eval prev2 = prev				
	comp	eval prev = comp				
	SEcomp	eval comp = SEcomp				
	Cell 1_Base	temp Cell1_Base = newCT	CadTeI_P1.base_temperature			
	Cell 1_Lip	temp Cell1_Lip = newCT_Lip	CadTeI_P1.tip_temperature			
	Shutter2	open Shutter2	TeI_P10			
	Shutter4	dose Shutter4	In_P7			
	Shutter 1	dose Shutter 1	CadTeI_P1			
	Shutter5	close Shutter5	CadTeI_P5			
	Shutter6	dose Shutter6	TeI_P2			
	Shutter3	dose Shutter3	ZnTe_P3			
	Shutter8	dose Shutter8	As_P6			
					c	Close

- 1) On the left, click on the "**Select directory**" button to choose the folder in which your Amber recipes are stored.
- 2) The contents of the folder will appear below (only .txt files will appear) in the list.
- 3) **Select the files** you wish to convert (multiple selection is allowed). You can also double-click on a file to start conversion automatically, but you must be sure that the chamber has been selected.
- 4) At the top center, select the relevant chamber (in this example, the chamber **Growth** is selected).
- 5) Click on the button "Convert selected files" to start the conversion.
- 6) You will be asked to choose the folder in which the new Crystal XE recipes will be saved.

In the central table, lines will be created automatically when a word is unknown and requires your intervention.

The left-hand column contains the unknown word. The middle column shows the context in which the word appears in the Amber recipe. You must fill in the right-hand column (click to open the Crystal XE data explorer).

Please note that the level of the equivalent property (equipment or sub equipment or tag name with full path) varies according to the type of word to be converted.

It's worth noting that in Crystal XE, each data can be accessed by following a tree structure in which each element is separated by a dot.

As a recipe is necessarily associated with a chamber, it is not necessary to add the chmaber name, so the format for a recipe is as follows: [Equipment name].[Sub-equipment name].[Parameter name] So, for example:

- To read the manipulator temperature, the path would be as follows: Manipulator.Temp.MV
- To modify the manipulator temperature setpoint, you need to modify the following tag: Manipulator.Temp.RampSP
- Manipulator.Temp.P to change the proportional band..

.. to display all tags, go in the main menu of Crystal XE: View / Data explorer.

### Equivalence level table:

Amber function	Crystal XE equivalent
To control the shutter of a cell	Select the cell equipment.
To control the shutter of a pyrometer	Select the pyrometer <b>sub equipment</b> .
To control the shutter of the manipulator (main	Select the manipulator shutter <b>sub-equipment</b> .
shutter)	
To change a parameter of a loop (setparameter	Select the sub equipment
function).	

Once you've entered the equivalents, you can repeat the conversion to improve the recipes obtained.

# 12.27.3. Conversion table

Here's how the converter changes amber instructions into Crystal XE instructions.

The yellow elements will be included in	a later version.
Amber instruction	Crystal XE equivalence
title (TEXT)	Title('TEXT');
comment (MESSAGE)	Comment('MESSAGE');
!	
wait [SECONDS]	Wait(SECONDS);
wait [MINUTES:SECONDS]	WaitMS(MINUTES,SECONDS);
wait [HOURS:MINUTES:SECONDS]	WaitHMS(HOURS, MINUTES, SECONDS);
Waituntil [Time of day]	WaitUntil(TimeOfDay);
Ex: waituntil 6:00 AM	
Waituntil [Time of day, day of the week]	WaitUntilDayWeek(TimeOfDay,DayOfTheWeek);
Ex: waituntil 6:00 AM, mon	ightarrow script function not defined
With sun, mon, tue, wed, thu, fri, sat	
waituntil ([lowLimit] < [tempLoop] <	WaitUntilRange(lowLimit, TempLoopTagName, HighLimit, time);
[highLimit]) [time in	
seconds]	
waitop (MESSAGE)	WaitOp('MESSAGE');
structure (NAME)	Procedure NAME; Begin
es	End;
writetext SE StartAcq(m43037)	Thickness_quartz.Ellipso.startACQ:=1;
writevalue [instrument name] [value]	[EquipmentName.SubEquipmentName.tag] := [value];
ex: writevalue ROT 0	ex: Manipulator.Rotation.Rotation_SP:=0;
open Pyro	Manipulator.PyroGeneric_Shutter.Open;
close Pyro	Manipulator.PyroGeneric_Shutter.Close;
eval VarNAME = VALUE_OR_FORMULA	<b>Var</b> VarNAME:real; // declared at the beginning of the script file.
	note: VarNAME must be defined only once.
	VarName := VALUE_OR_FORMULA;
step(x)	step(x);
	CollName sub, equipement PempSP := SETROINT:

ex; with constant; temp ga 945				
ex:with variable: <b>temp</b> ga=mvSetpointVar				
temp [CELL] [SETPOINT] [RampRate]	CellName.sub_equipement.RampSlopeSP := F	RampRate:		
	CellName.sub_equipement. <b>RampSP</b> := SETPC	DINT;		
ramprate [CELL] [RampRate]	CellName.sub_equipement.RampSlopeSP := F	₹ampRate;		
writefile ([filename]; arg1, arg2, arg3,)	Several	possibilities:		
columns are separated by tabs	- WriteFileStrVal(wFname:string;Title:string;	wVal:real);		
	- WriteFile2(filename,val1,val2);			
	- WriteFile3(filename,val1,val2,val3);			
	- WriteFile4(filename,val1,val2,val3);			
setparameter [PARAMETER]	Equipment.sub_equipment.PARAMETER:=VAF	2		
[LOOPNAME]=[VAR]	The parameter is the tag relative to the sub equipment	nt		
	Parameters equivalence : XP=>P, OP=>TOP			
	Example1: Manipulator.Temp.P:=25;			
example1: setparameter XP sub 25	<b>Example2</b> : CadTel_P5.tip_temperature.TOP:=8.0;			
example2: setparameter OP Cell5_Lip 8.0				
Repeat [INTEGER]	For [VAR]:=1 to	INTEGER do		
	Begin			
er				
	end;			

Please note that some functions in this table depend on the equipment name, which is specific to the configuration. It is therefore necessary to adapt it to the names given in your configuration.

### About layers:

In Crystal XE recipes, there is a notion of layer that does not exist in Amber recipes.

Amber uses the Wait function, whereas Crystal XE distinguishes between two instructions:

- Layer

- sleep (The "wait" function of the Amberlib file call sleep)

The Amberlib library transforms Amber's Wait instructions into Crystal XE's sleep instructions. There is therefore no Layer instruction in the recipes generated by the converter.

Unlike sleep (or Wait for Amber), the Layer instruction allows you to record a message at each layer and quantify the layers performed.

Like the converter, systematically translates wait instructions into sleep, you are free to manually replace Wait instructions with Layer instructions in Crystal XE recipes to best suit your needs. Compared with the wait function, the **layer function** requires an additional parameter: **the text associated with the layer**. Please note that the layer duration is expressed in **milliseconds**, whereas the basic unit of the wait function is **seconds**.

### Example of table used in the converter (not completed):

Amber identifier	Context (original)	Crystal XE equivalent
Pyro	open Pyro	Manipulator.PyroGeneric_Shutter
PYRO_V	eval pyrotemp1 = PYRO_V	Manipulator.Pyro.MV
subtarget	eval cursubtarget = subtarget	Manipulator.Temp.MV
sub	temp sub = newsubtemp	Manipulator.Temp.RampSP
prev	eval prev2 = prev	
comp	eval prev = comp	1
SEcomp	eval comp = SEcomp	6
Cell1_Base	temp Cell1_Base = newCT	CadTeI_P1.base_temperature
Cell1_Lip	temp Cell1_Lip = newCT_Lip	CadTeI_P1.tip_temperature
Shutter2	open Shutter2	TeI_P10
Shutter4	dose Shutter4	In_P7
Shutter 1	close Shutter1	CadTeI_P1
Shutter5	close Shutter5	CadTeI_P5
Shutter6	close Shutter6	TeI_P2
Shutter3	close Shutter3	ZnTe_P3
Shutter8	close Shutter8	As_P6
valve	temp valve 0	
SE	close SE	
Cell4	temp Cell4 200 18	In_P7.temperature
Cell5_Base	temp Cell5_Base 250 15	CadTeI_P5.base_temperature
Cell2_Base	temp Cell2_Base 150 10	TeI_P10.base_temperature
Cell6_Base	temp Cell6_Base 150 10	TeI_P2.base_temperature
Cell3_Base	temp Cell3_Base 200 18	ZnTe_P3.base_temperature
Cell2_Lip	temp Cell2_Lip 170 4	TeI_P10.tip_temperature
Cell3_Lip	temp Cell3_Lip 300 10	ZnTe_P3.tip_temperature
Shutter 7	close Shutter 7	
Cell7	temp Cell7 176.8 10	
Shutter7	open Shutter7	
PYRO_V	eval pyrotemp1 = PYRO_V	
subtarget	eval cursubtarget = subtarget	
prev	eval prev2 = prev	
comp	eval prev = comp	
SEcomp	eval comp = SEcomp	

Cells displayed with a red background indicate the need to enter an equivallent. Otherwise, the converter will insert the original name.

# 12.27.4. Limitations

### Read or Write tags:

The converter does not distinguish between read and write data. For example, the word "sub" can be used in both cases:

- 1) temp sub = newsubtemp
- 2) waituntil (595<sub<605) 60

In the first case, it's a write and the equivalent should be manipulator.Temp.RampSP := newsubtemp; and in the second case, the equivalent should be the property "manipulator.Temp.MV" but the converter does not distinguish the difference.

### <u>WriteFile</u>

As the writefile function can accept an unlimited number of arguments, the converter does not transcribe all cases.

Only the case where the first argument is a string and the second a value is translated and call the function WriteFileStrVal (this script function is defined in the AmberLib.pas file).

# 12.28. Use a dialog box (form) in a recipe

# 12.28.1. Create the dialog box

In the main menu, select File/New/New form.

Create the following form which contain 5 objects as shown above (3 indicators and 2 buttons).

🔀 My Dialog box			X
	Start temperature	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	Number of layers 4 Temperature increment		
	5		
Start	c	ancel	

Give the following names to the objects:

(Click on each object and enter the name in the yellow edit box located in the bottom of the tool palette).

- StartTemp for the indicator "start temperature"
- NbLayers for the indicator "Number of layers"
- TempInc for the indicator "Temperature increment"

You can enter a text for the title (in the tool palette, enter a text in the field Window title).

Double click on the Start button and enter the following script:

```
Begin
SaveDataToIniFile('test.ini'); //Data of all objects will be saved
CloseModal(1); // Close the dialog box and return 1
End;
```

→ User data of the form will be saved into the file test.ini (default directory is the data directory of the project).

Click once in the window background and enter the following script in the OnCreate event of the form:

OnCreate <3 lines>

```
Begin
LoadDataFromIniFile('test.ini');
```

 $\rightarrow$  The previous data of the form will be loaded when the form will be shown. Double click on the Cancel button and enter the following script:

```
Begin
CloseModal(0); // Close the dialog box and return 0
End;
```

Exit the Toolpalette and give a name "test.form" to save the form to a file.

# 12.28.2. Create the Recipe

In the recipe tab, just above the recipe inspector, click on the button "New script"





Source is available here: RecipeWithDialog.pas

Save it to a file with the name of your choice.

# 12.28.3. Run the recipe

- Open the script recipe into the recipe inspector.
- Press the Run button

My Dialog box	-	
	Start temperature	
	200	
	Number of layers	
	4	
	Temperature increment	
	5	
Start		Cancel

Press Start

🚰 RecipeWithDia	alog.pas			/ *
🕑 Run 🔘	Stop Dause	Skip layer	Total time:::	Layer count: 0
Current layer				
10/11/2014 09:53	2:47,328	> Completed		
Number : 5	Remai	ning time:	Pause tim	e:
Main info				
Start time: 10/11/20	014 09:52:10 Elap	sed time : 00:00:37	Total pause tim	ie:
Layer  Date /	Time		Description	
0001  10/11/20	14 09:52:36,376	Change regul	ation mode	
0002  10/11/20	14 09:52:38,376	Loop number:	1/4 200 °C	
0003  10/11/20	14 09:52:40,376	Loop number:	2/4 205 °C	
0004  10/11/20	14 09:52:42,376	Loop number:	3/4 210 °C	
0005  10/11/20	14 09:52:44,376	Loop number:	4/4 215 °C	
			> Completed	

# 12.29. Automatic report generation

Select the first item "Main" in the tree view.

🕞 Main [Noname] Duration= 1 min 💀

### 12.29.1. Default automatic report

Crystal XE allows the automatic generation of reports following a predefined template.

You must first install Libre Office on your computer, then, to activate the report generation, check the box "Generate report file".

**IMPORTANT**: If the libre office application stops responding while the recipe is running, the recipe may be blocked. It is therefore not recommended to use report generation for very critical recipes.

X Main recipe editor [RHVP 63 TEST QCS.rcp]		•••
File Edit View		
📄 📂 🐺 💷 🔟 🕷 🖬 Offsets G.Rates Var		
+ Expand all - Collapse all	Properties Generated script Charts	
Script (len=73) - Initialize QCS template	General	Show map 🗹 Show lines 🗹 Substrate on top
01:00:00:00.000- START- Layer duration= 1 sec	Title	00:00:00.000
H 02:00:00:01.000- PALIER PING- Layer duration = 4 min	Туре	
04:00:04:02.000- STAND BY PING- Layer duration = 10 min	Author	
Script (len=156) - Initial measurement (R1)	Company	UP
06:00:14:03.000-PALIER PING OFF-Layer duration= 1 sec	Comments	
07:00: 14:04.000- UP- Layer duration = 6 hour		
08:06:14:04.000-STAND BY 1h-Layer duration = 1 hour		STAND BY 1b
09:07:14:04.000- STAND BY 6h-Layer duration = 6 hour		
Script (len=172) - Measurement after 9h at 32 W (R3)		
EI = 10:13:14:04.000- FIN DE RAMP- Layer duration = 1 sec EI = 11:13:14:05.000- DOWN- Layer duration = 6 hour		
12:19:14:05.000-PING FIN-Layer duration = 4 min	Creation: 03/08/2022 10:55:49	STAND BY 6h
13:19:18:05.000 Layer duration = 0 sec	Script libraries (file names used separated by commas, no space)	
Script (len=174) - Final measurement (R4)	📄 🔯 🧭 🗙	
15:20:48:05.000Layer duration= 0 sec	Uses QCS_repport	
└─ <b></b> Script (len=20) - Close the template	Auto check scripts while typing (red background when error	
	Report	DOWN
		(1000)
	Generate report file	
	Report also layers in loops	
		PALIER FIN
	1 1	otal= 20:48:05.000 - 15 layers
Detach		
		3
	ViewportHeater	
Script (len=73) Initialize QCS template	Duration Inickness Material StartHigh StopRamp	LooiDown
01 00:00:00.000 START	1 sec	
03 00:04:01.000 STOP RAMP ON	1 sec ON ON	
		Ok Cancel

This option will use by default the files:

- LO\_WriterReport.odt : this is the document template
- LO\_WriterReport.pas: this is the script library

Do not modify directly these files as the changes may be lost in a future update of Crystal XE. To customize them, you must copy them to your project folder, see the next section for more details.

Report files will be automatically created based on the template document but with a new file name. The file name will be the same as the data CSV file created by the recorder but the extension is .DOC to be readable by MSWord.

Example of file name : 2022-09-05\_14-39-48\_Bx-P1-C0-C21DZ-HEMT growth.doc

In the location : C:\riber\CrystalXE\DEMO\_C21DZ\Record\2022\09\

**IMPORTANT:** The document remains open as long as the recipe is running. Be sure not to close it until the recipe is finished to avoid errors.

# **12.29.2.** Customize the automatic report

If you want to modify the default report or create a new one at your convenience, then click on the following button:



The following message will appear:



After confirmation, this action copies the LO\_WriterReport.odt and LO\_WriterReport.pas files into the subfolder \Template\Report\ of your project.

Then you can use the following buttons to edit the files:



As these files will be duplicated in both the program folder and the project folder, then priority will be given to the project folder.

### Document LO\_WriterReport.odt

- This template is loaded in the procedure "**Report\_Init**" of the library file (LO\_WriterReport.pas) when you check the box "Generate report file".
- If you want to insert data from Crystal XE into this document then you must insert bookmarks. You can manage all bookmarks in the document by the menu "Insert/Bookmark..." and call the procedure App.OLE.Poke to insert data at the bookmark places.
- You can also add table in the document, add row in that table from Crystal XE, fill the cells etc...You can address the tables by their position number in the document. For more information, refer to the script manual, in the section OLE.

# Library LO\_WriterReport.pas

This library is automatically used by the recipe when you check the box "Generate report file"

The recipe will automatically call several functions that must be present in this library.

The mandatory functions are the following:

- Procedure Report\_Init(sChamberName:String);

Report\_Init is called only once, at the begining of the recipe, the chamber name of the recipe is passed as a parameter.

- **Procedure** Report\_Layer(aLayerComment:String;aLayerTimeMS:integer);

Report\_Layer is called at each layer, before the waiting time.

Parameters are:

- aLayerComment: The comment of the layer that was defined when the recipe was written.
- aLayerTimeMS : the duration of the layer in milliseconds

### Procedure Report\_End;

Report\_end is called at the end of the recipe. This is the last thing the recipe does before it stops.

# **13. FORMS AND OBJECTS**

# 13.1. INTRODUCTION

*Crystal XE* is provided with a library of customizable **objects**, allowing the user to display information or to perform an action.

In *Crystal XE*, **forms** are windows on which you can place one or several objects to create customized graphic interfaces. Forms offer wide range of possibilities. For instance, you can create a form in order to perform a specific task only (monitoring equipment, controlling a recipe, etc.), or conversely design a synoptic view of your system.

You can customize the appearance of each form or object and interact with it by setting its properties and events in the *Tool palette*.

The *Tool palette* is the form and object designing interface. When editing a form, the *Tool palette* window appears on the left side and can be moved all over the screen.



Tool palette overview

# 13.2. Object library

All the objects you can place on a form are listed in a library, located in the upper part of the *Tool palette*:



The object library is divided into five tabs:

Tab	Types of object
Basic	Equipment type (equipment and sub equipment)
Usual	Label Indicator Group box Chart Script
On/Off	Confirmation button Light
Windows	Standard button Memo Listbox Checkbox Radio button Combo box Progress bar
Other	Image Animated image Rotary button Lines and pipes Cursor Window splitter Video camera Cassette

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about the different objects, please refer to the section <u>Type of objects</u> in this chapter.

You can easily add objects to a form using drag and drop.

Each object has defined type and set of properties and events that can be modified using the settings panel in the lower part of the *Tool palette*.

# 13.3. Settings

When a form or one of the objects placed on that form is selected, its corresponding settings appear in the *Tool palette*:



Form settings panel

The available settings depend on the type of object.

The settings panel is divided into two tabs:

- Basic settings:
  - customizing the text and the background style,
  - defining the values to be displayed (Property menu),
  - specifying an event (Scripts menu),
  - defining the form/object name,
  - adjusting the position and size of the form/object,
  - other available options depending on the object type.

### Advanced settings:

Accessing all the form or the object properties and events.

# 13.4. FORMS

In Crystal XE, a form is an object (window) that contains other objects.

Forms allow the user to display or monitor information and interact with one or several objects throughout the program.

By default, the forms already created in the system are:

• The main *User view* 

On the *Mai*n tab, the *User view* is the main form (synoptic view) already created in the program. You can edit the *User view* and detach the form window.



### The tool bar

The Tool bar, located at the top of the interface, is also a form you can edit and place objects on (only in the blue area)



### • Chamber User view

*Crystal XE* allows you to design a *User view* for each chamber, accessible with the *User view* tab.

To display the *User view* tab:

- On the Setup menu (menu bar), click on Hardware configuration
- Select the desired chamber in the tree structure and check the User view box (Visible pages)

KE Hardware configuration		
File Templates Tools		
C-		
Han Gobal variables Simulation mode Hat Architecture Galoment Grupoment	Chamber Parameters Chamber Name C21DZ Chamber description Visible pages C Bugiment C Becurity C Becurity C Recepe C Charbs C Recorder C Batetics	
	Recipes	
	This recipe is executed always before to run a recipe	<u> </u>
	Pré-recipe 🝃	<u> </u>
	This recipe is executed always when the main recipe is terminated Post-recipe	×
	Number of platens 1	
	Chamber type 0: Process (MBE)	
	This recipe is executed before the platen to be placed in the chamber	
	Recipe hie name 📂	<u>×</u>
	Restore default data when dosing Ok Car	ncel

*Crystal XE* also enables you to create your own **separated forms** (windows). The following sections describe the creation of forms and objects using the *Tool palette*.

# 13.4.1. CREATING FORMS

### Creating a new form

To create a new form, click on the *File* menu (menu bar) and select *New* > *Form*.



A new default form is created automatically and opened in the form editor (Tool palette).



Tool palette

Default new form

• To save a new form, click on the following icon **[**, in the top-hand corner of the *Tool* palette or click on *File* > *Save as*.

Tool palette \forms\maintoolbar.sysform 🕲				
File				
🛃 <u>S</u> ave	Exit			
🚊 Save as				
<b>F D D D D D D D D D D</b>	Windows Others			
Exit editing F12	<b></b>			

The form is saved as a '.form' file to the Forms folder located in your project directory.

### Opening a form

To open a form, click on the *File* menu (menu bar), select *Open > Open form* and then select the desired form file.



You can also open a form using a script and the function *FileOpen*.

### *Example:* Creating a button that opens a specific form file.

- Edit the toolbar (right click on it and select "Edit the form")
- Add a button to the *Toolbar* (drag an object "Button" from the tool palette in the Windows category)



Double click on the button to open the script editor. This script will be executed when the button will be clicked (OnClick event). In the following example, the script opens the form file named 'Cells.form':

Press F1 key when the cursor is in the word "Fileopen" to open the relative help on this topic.

- Close the script editor by pressing the OK button.
- Terminate the edition of the toolbar by clicking on the "Exit" button of the Tool Palette.

### **Editing forms**

Only active (open) forms can be edited. First, open the form to be edited. Right-click on the form background and select *Edit the form* to open the *Tool palette*.

File	View	Tools	Editors	Setup	Windo	w Help	)
1			<u>E</u> dit	a form	•	<u>T</u> ool b	bar
_ (		aiviu (	•				UT DUCTIL

### Adding or removing objects

• To add an object to the form, select the desired object from the object library in the *Tool palette* and place it on the form using drag and drop.



The object is placed on the form with the default properties. When editing, select it to display its settings in the *Tool palette*.

• To remove an object from a form, select it and press the [Del] key or right click on it and select *Delete*. You can also delete an object using the Object list editor that can be accessed by right-clicking the form background.

### **Selecting objects**

Click an object to select it. You can also select an object using the *Object list editor* that can be accessed by right-clicking the form background.

To select multiple objects, click on the first item, press and hold down the [Shift] key, and then click on each other item you want to select.

You can also drag the mouse pointer to create a rectangle selection around the outside of all the items you want to select.

🔀 MyForm	
Group	Button

When one (or several) object is selected, press the [ESC] key to unselect it. Then the form is selected and the *Tool palette* displays the form settings.

### **Resizing objects**

To resize an object, click one of the blue circles surrounding the object, hold down the left mouse button and drag it.

×	MyForm	-		
	•	· · · · · • • · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • •	
	Group			
	:			
	1		<b>e</b> : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : :	
	:			
	:		· · · · ·	
	•••••••••	•••••		
Q2				

You can also resize the selected object **pixel by pixel** using the following panel from the *Tool palette* or from the Object list editor:



To adjust the size of several objects, select them and then right-click and select *Size* from the popup menu:

<u> Align selected objects on grid</u>	I F2
∰ <u>G</u> rid options	F3
🖳 Bring to front	F5
📲 Send to back	F6
Align and distribute	
🖳 S <u>i</u> ze	F8
Undo delete	
<u> </u>	Ctrl+X
<u>а</u> Сору	Ctrl+C
Paste	
X <u>D</u> elete	Del
S <u>e</u> lect all	Ctrl+A
Objects list editor	
📲 E <u>x</u> it editor	F12

You can modify the width and height values of the selected objects:



- No change: keep the current width or height value.
- **Reduce to the smallest**: set the width or height value of the object having the smallest width or height value among the selected object.
- Enlarge to the largest: set the width or height value of the object having the largest width or height value among the selected object.
- Enter the desired width and height value.

### **Object list editor**

Right-click on a form background and to open the Object list editor:

╡ Align selected objects on grid	F2
∰ <u>G</u> rid options	F3
🖫 Bring to front	F5
<mark>₽</mark> <u>S</u> end to back	F6
	F7 🕨
🖳 S <u>i</u> ze	F8
	Ctrl+Z
<mark>≮</mark> <u>C</u> ut	Ctrl+X
<mark>₽</mark> С <u>о</u> ру	Ctrl+C
r <u>P</u> aste	Ctrl+V
<mark>X D</mark> elete	Del
S <u>e</u> lect all	Ctrl+A
Objects list editor	
📲 E <u>x</u> it editor	F12

The *Object list editor* lists all object contained in that form. You can change the list order, select an object, modify the object size and position or delete an object.



### **Moving objects**

You can move an object all over the form by dragging it. Select the desired object, hold down the left mouse button and then drag it and drop it to any part of the window. You can also select an object, and use the arrow keys to move an object over the grid.

To move an object pixel by pixel, press and hold the [CTRL] key when moving the selected object using the arrow keys.

### **Grid options**

Right-click the form background and select *Grid options* to display the available options.



- To align objects on the grid, at least two objects must be selected.
- Check/uncheck the following box to show/hide the grid:



• You can define the size of the grid by adjusting X increment and Y increment values:



### Aligning and distributing objects

If an object if not align one or several objects on the grid, select them, then right-click and select *Align selected objects on grid* to align the objects at the top:



You can also align objects with each others.

After selecting several objects you want to align, right-click the form background to open the popup menu.



Move the mouse over Align and distribute to display the drop-down menu:

• Align top edges: objects will be aligned on the topmost object.

- Align vertical center: objects will be aligned on a virtual horizontal line located in the middle between the topmost object and the bottommost object.
- Align bottom edges: objects will be aligned on the bottommost object.
- **Distribute horizontal axis**: the horizontal space between each object will be distributed without changing the position of the leftmost object and the rightmost object.
- Align left edges: objects will be aligned on the leftmost object.
- Align horizontal center: objects will be aligned on a virtual vertical line located in the middle between the leftmost object and the rightmost object.
- Align right edges: objects will be aligned on the rightmost object.
- **Distribute vertical axis**: the vertical space between each object will be distributed without changing the position of the topmost object and the bottommost object.

### Overlaying objects

You can change the layering order of the objects placed on a form.

- To lay an object on top, select it, then right-click and select Bring to front.
- If you want an object to be under other object, select it, then right-click and select Send to back.

Align selected objects on grid	F2
∰ <u>G</u> rid options	F3
🖳 Bring to front	F5
🛃 Send to back	F6

# 13.5. FORM PROPERTIES AND EVENTS

As any object, forms have their own associated properties and events. You can modify some of their properties to adjust the appearance and behavior of your forms. When a form is being edited, select the form (click on the form background) to display the form settings in the lower part of the *Tool palette*.

You can modify some of the form properties and specify an *OnCreate* event using the basic settings (*Basic* tab). All the form properties and events can be accessed using the advanced settings (*Advanced* tab).

# **13.5.1. Basic properties and OnCreate event**

	[Form_1]: THMIForm	
	Basic Properties Events Functions	
	♥ Design	
	Window title	
Window title	MyForm	
Y	» Scripts	
	» Layers	
	>> Protection	
	X: 1707 🕃 Y: 0 😂 W: 618 😁 H: 541 😂	Position and size
Name property	Name HMIFForm_1	

### Window title



Type the title of your form into the text box. The title appears in the window's title bar. The window title differs from the *File* name of the form ('*.form*' file) and from the name property (used to identify the form in the program).

# Background and foreground

The background of the form consists of two layers.



Layer 1 is bellow layer 2.

Usually, layer 1 is a gradient color and layer 2 is an image that represents the machine.

### Layer 1:

Select the style of the form background from the drop-down list:



### **Back color**

Define one (solid) or two colors (gradients) by clicking on the corresponding boxes:





Gradient vertical



Gradient horizontal



Solid color

### Transparent background

The background becomes transparent after exiting the Tool palette.

You cannot right-click on a form when its background is transparent. To edit the form, click on the Editors menu (menu bar), select Edit form and then select the form to be edited.

When designing, you cannot add objects to a form when its background is transparent. Select another background style before adding objects.

#### **Back picture**



You can choose between four different layout options for the background image. If the image is smaller than your window size, a solid color border may appear around your image.

Generally, the back picture image allows the use of a repetitive texture in the background. So generally, we use the Tile option but several other options are available.

Select the desired back picture option from the drop-down list:



• **Top left**: the image is fixed in the left-hand corner of the window:



• **Centered**: the image is fixed in the middle of the window:



• **Tile**: the image is duplicated across the window:



*Tile* option is useful to allow small texture image to repeat horizontally and vertically across the window:



• **Stretched**: a single image is stretched across the whole window.



Depending of the window size, the ratio of the image can be changed, and the image can be distorted.

### Layer 2: foreground picture



Click on the **Open** button to add a background image. Compatible image files: Bmp, jpg, png and emf
Once a picture is loaded, you can select a color to be used as a transparent color.



Click on the rectangle to change the transparent color.

All the pixels of the image which are the same color as the transparent color reveal the content of layer 1.



### Foreground pictures

Unlike a background image on layer 1 (fixed), a foreground image on layer 2 can be moved using the *Offset X* and *Offset Y* settings.

Use Offset X to adjust the position of the image from the left (of the window) and Offset Y to adjust the position from the top:



### Form size and position

To adjust the size of the form, simply stretch it using the mouse, as any standard window. As you stretch the form, the width and height properties are adjusted.

You can move the form by dragging it directly to the desired part of the screen, as any standard window. As you move the form, the *To*p and *Left* properties are adjusted.

You can find the above properties in the following panel, located at the bottom of the *Tool* palette:

X: 216 🕃 Y: 112 🕃 W: 112 🕃 H: 56 🤤

You can adjust the form position from the left (X) and from the top (Y) of the screen as well as the form width (W) and height (H) values using this panel.

Once you have selected a setting, you can increase or decrease the value using the up and down arrow keys.

### Form name



The *Name* property is a unique name identifying the form and giving access, throughout *Crystal XE* program, to all its properties and events as well as properties and events of all objects included in that form.

Example: Using a script (outside the Tool palette)

The object Indicator1, contained in the form Form\_1, displays the height value (height property) of the object Chart1, contained in the form Form\_2:

Rescal editor [HMIForm_1.0nCreate]	
File Edit Search Tools Options Help	
📄 📓 📂 💆 💭 🎋 🎇 🖾 🍪 🔃 🛛 Parameters: 📉 💌	
Main	
1 Begin	haisha
<pre>app.forms.form_1.indicator1.value := app.forms.form_2.chart1. 3 end;</pre>	neight;
3: 7 Modified Insert	
Ok	Cancel

app.forms.Form\_1.indicator1.value := app.forms.Form\_2.chart1.height



🔼 Nai

Names are not case-sensitive

The form must be open when editing the script (outside of the *Tool palette*) and when the script is executed.

If you attempt to **edit** the script when the form is not open, the following error message will appear:



If you attempt to **execute** the script when the form window is not open, the following dialog box will appear:



### From scripts (OnCreate event)

On the Basic tab, you can specify an *OnCreat*e event by either using the *Scripts* menu or by double-clicking the form background.

♦ Scripts
OnCreate
(executed each time the form is displayed)

Click on the following icon **...** to open the Pascal editor and edit your script.

The edited script is executed when you exit the *Tool palette* and each time you open the form.

Scripts edited using either Basic or Event tabs override scripts that have been edited outside the *Tool palette*.

*Example 1:* Assigning a default value to an indicator when opening the form

Pascal editor [Form	1.OnCrea 🗖 🗖 📈	
File Edit Search	Tools Options Help	
1 2 🐸 😂 🖬	🗚 🔮 🏂 🅸 📓	
Main		MyForm
1 Begin	·	
3 End;		MyIndicator
	۲.	123
2: 29	Insert	
	Ok Cancel	

Example 2: Infinite loop

You can create an infinite loop using the reserved word Repeat. The task (script) will be repeating over and over until the form is closed:

xii Pasca	l editor [HMIForm_1.OnCreate]
File Ed	it Search Tools Options Help
1 2 2	🚰 🙆 🔒 👭 🛸 🏂 🏇 🔞
Main	
1	Begin
2	Repeat
3	Light1.IsOn := not(Light1.IsOn);
4	sleep(500);
5	until false;
6	End;
	-
•	۱. Electric de la construcción de l
1: 1	Insert
	Ok Cancel

It is recommended to insert the sleep statement within the infinite loop (see example above) to avoid overloading the processor.

I To insert a repetitive script in the form, we recommend that you use the object script.

In this example, the object *Light*1 will be switching from *On state* to *Off state*, at 500 milliseconds intervals (sleep) until the form window is closed (false).



### Form protection

The *Protection* menu allows you to specify a password and limit access to the *Tool palette*. The password will be required when attempting to edit the form.

Specify the password using the text box:



Nhe form can still be opened without requiring password.

To disable the password, leave the field empty as follows:



You can also allow/forbid the edition of forms to a particular group of users by checking/unchecking the *Edit forms* box in the *Group authorization* editor as follows:



The *Group authorization* editor can be accessed from the *Setup* menu > *Users* > *Edit groups* (you will need appropriate user right to perform that action).

### 13.5.2. Advanced properties and events

Click on the Advanced tab to display all the form properties and events.

### **Properties**



On the *Properties* tab, all the form properties and their values are listed in a table.

The above example is for reference only. All properties have not been implemented yet in *Crystal XE*.

More details are also available on the Internet using the key words:

'Vcl.Forms.TForm Properties'

	[MainUserView]: TH	-	
、	Basic Properties	Events Functions	
Event	Events OnActivate OnClick OnCreate OnDblClick OnDeactivate OnKeyDown OnKeyPress OnKeyUp OnMouseDown OnMouseDown OnMouseUp OnResize OnResize OnShow	Script	Edit the script to be executed upon that event

The above example is for reference only. All events have not been implemented yet in *Crystal XE*.

Additional help can be found on the Internet using the key words:

**Events** 

Vcl.Forms.TForm Events

*Example 1*: Specifying an OnMouseMove event:



When moving the mouse over the form, the value of the Indicator 1 indicates the position of the cursor from the top left-hand corner of the window (X parameter).

Rescal editor [HMIFForm_1.0nMouseMove]
File Edit Search Tools Options Help
🗎 🗐 📂 🕎 🛃 👭 🎇 🛛 🍪 🚯
Main
1 🗖 Begin
2 indicator1.value := x; 3 End;
×
1: 1 Modified Insert
Ok Cancel

This document is Property of RIBER - December 2024

MyForm		
	Indicator 1 183	ß

The parameters available with this event are listed in the *Parameters* drop-down list in the tool bar:

Distance in the second second			
Parameters:	X : Integer	-	J
	Shift : TShiftState		
	X : Integer		
	Y : Integer	5	

You can directly add the desired parameter to the script using the following icon:

Example 2: Specifying an OnCreate event

Rescal editor [Container1.0nCreate]	
File Edit Search Tools Options Help	
📄 🗐 📂 🕎 🛃 📶 🎆 🛛 🎲 👪 📃 🏾 Parameters:	· · ·
Main	
1 Begin	
3 End;	
<	•
2: 35 Modified Insert	
	Ok Cancel

In this example, when the form will be opened, the data of all the objects contained in the form will be loaded from a file.

This example assumes that the data of all objects contained in the form has been saved previously to the file '*test.ini*' using the function *SaveDataToIniFile('test.ini'*).

### **13.6. OBJECT PROPERTIES AND EVENTS**

### 13.6.1. Basic settings

### **Object title and texts**

Some objects are automatically accompanied by a title or a caption (indicators, group boxes, charts, buttons, etc.). If not, you can add it manually using a Label object and display static text.

You can customize the properties of all texts (titles, values, lists, etc.) provided with objects by clicking on the following icon:



You can modify the:

Typeface, size, weight, color, etc...



### **Object background style**

You can customize the background of some objects such as labels, group boxes, graphs, etc.



Select the desired background style from the drop-down list and define the colors:



Transparent background option is only available with some objects (labels, indicators, etc.). Select Transparent in the style drop-down list or check *Transparent background* when applicable.

🔽 Transparent background

### **Object position and size**

```
X: 1707 🕃 Y: 133 🕃 W: 474 🕃 H: 445 🕃
```

The above panel, located at the bottom of the *Tool palette* allows you to: adjust the object **position** from the left (X) and from the top (Y) of the window adjust the object **width** (W) and height (H) properties

Once you have selected a setting, you can increase/decrease the value using the up/down arrow keys.

### Access properties and Data explorer

Some objects can be used to display one of the equipment properties and to modify its value (when writable).

Depending on the property, different types of data can be displayed: **Numeric value**: measured value, output power value, etc. **Enumeration**: checked/ unchecked, on/off, etc. **Texts** (strings): equipment name

The *Data explorer* lists, in a tree structure, all the properties that can be displayed by the selected object.

When applicable, click on the following icon to open the *Data explorer* and select the desired property:



Data explorer

Outside the *Tool palette*, you can access the *Data explorer* from the menu bar by clicking on *View > Data explorer*.



### Examples of displayed value:

Numeric value: Disk\_Space (App > Disk\_Space )

🔀 Myform				x	
Dis	k Sj	pace	2:		
9	04	27			
				_	

Enumeration: AllAgentDisable (Loading > Cluster > port > AllAgentDisable) 1: true, 0: false

X	Myform
	All alarms disabled
	1

Text: Name (C21DZ>As\_VAC500\_P1> Name)



### **Object name**

Use the yellow text box, located at the bottom of the *Tool palette*, to modify the name property identifying the object:



The name is an ID that gives you access to all the object properties and events in any script throughout *Crystal XE* program (and not only within the *Tool palette*).

When you first add an object to a form, a default name is allocated (Chart1, Chart2, and so on). You can rename the object by typing a new name in the text box.

If an object name has already been used in one or several scripts throughout the program, errors can occur when modifying that name.



Names are not case-sensitive

### **Object scripts and events**

Events are used to specify an action to be performed by the program in response to a specific user interaction.

On the *Basic* tab, *OnClick* events can be specified for some interactive objects such as buttons, checkboxes, animated images, etc. The script is executed when the object is clicked.

When applicable, you can edit the script to be executed when the event occurs using the *Scripts* menu:



Click on the following icon ... to open the Pascal editor:



### 13.6.2. Advanced settings

The Advanced tab gives access to all properties and events associated with the selected object.

### **Properties**

Properties are specific values included within an object. Although some properties apply to most objects, the properties are different for each type of object.

The *Properties* tab gives you access to all the object properties and allows you to define their values.

[ToolBar]: THMIForm		-
Basic Properties	Events Functions	
Properties	Values	
Align	alClient	
AllowClose	True	-
AllowMultipleInstanc	False	
AllowSave	True	
AlphaBlend	False	
AlphaBlendValue	255	
Anchors	TAnchors	
AutoScroll	False	
AutoSize	False	
BackGround	TPicture	
BkGrStyle	bsTile	
BkStyle	f_Solid	
Borderlcons	TBorderIcons	
BorderStyle	bsNone	
BorderWidth		
Caption	CRYSTAL XE- Toolba	
ClientHeight	32	
ClientWidth	908	
Color	RGB(800000)	
ColorFrom	RGB(FDF6EA)	
ColorTo	RGB(F5D9A7)	
ColorTransparent	RGB(000000)	
Constraints	TSizeConstraints	
CtI3D	True	
DefaultMonitor	dmDesktop	
DockSite	False	, in the second s

Each property can only store a specific **type of data**: Booleans (true or false), numeric values or strings.

For example, the width property can only store numbers.

### Width 🛛 🕺

Depending on the property, you can modify a value by:

Selecting your choice from a drop-down list

Enabled	True	
Filename	False	
Font	True	

### Opening a panel for more options

Color	65408	
Couleurs	*	
Couleurs de base :		
💻 🗖 🗖 🗖 🗖		
🔳 📕 🗖 🗖 🗖		
🔳 📕 🔳 🔲 🗖		
Couleurs personnalisées :		
Définir les couleurs personna	alisées >>	
OK Annuler		

Typing the value directly into the text box:

Width 184



### **Events**

A set of events is associated with each type of objects.

The *Events* tab gives you access to all events and allow you to edit a script to be executed when the event occurs.

Basic	Properties	Events	Functions	
Events		Script		
OnActi OnClic	ivate k	]		
OnCre	ate			
OnDbl	Click			
OnDea	activate			
OnKey	Down			
OnKey	Press			
OnKey	Up			
OnMo	useDown			
OnMo	useMove			
OnMo	useUp			
OnRes	ize			
OnSho	W			

Click on the following icon to open the Pascal editor and edit your script.

*Example*: Double-clicking an image to close the form using an *OnDblClick* event

OnDblClick	
MyForm	
$\odot$	

REFE Pascal editor [Tool	Bar.OnDblClick]	000
File Edit Search Too	ols Options Help 🍻 🎇 🛿 🍪 🔀 🖳 Param	meters:
1 Begin 2 Close; 3 End;	8	Þ
2: 9	Modified Insert	
		Ok Cancel

 $\rightarrow$  You can find more examples of events and scripts in the section **Form properties and events** in this chapter.

## 13.7. TYPES OF OBJECT

### 13.7.1. Basic tab (list of equipment)

### Equipment1: TObjEquipment

To add this on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

The chambers and their associated equipment and sub equipment are listed in a tree structure at the top of the *Tool palette*.



Expand the lists and click on the desired item to pick up the object.

Some items do not have a corresponding visual object.

• **Drag and drop** the equipment object into the form window.



Equipment objects: Equipment and sub equipment

When the equipment is selected, its *Reference* (full path identifier) is displayed in the *Tool* palette.



The reference indicates the chamber associated with the equipment and the equipment associated with the sub equipment:



Uncheck Visible to hide the equipment or sub equipment item. The object is hidden only after exiting the Tool palette.



All object in the basic tab are wrapped in another object.

It is possible to modify an object by right clicking on it and selecting "Edit this object"

As_VAC	Edit this object	-
SP 787.7 285.43 SP 285.2	Align selected objects on grid <u>Grid</u> options	F2 F3
SP	■ <u>B</u> ring to front <u>■ S</u> end to back	F5 F6
	Align and distribute	F7 ▶ F8
	₽ <u>U</u> ndo delete	Ctrl+Z
	<mark>≪ ⊆</mark> ut <mark>™</mark> C <u>o</u> py	Ctrl+X Ctrl+C
	<mark>i≧</mark> <u>P</u> aste <b>X</b> <u>D</u> elete	Ctrl+V Del
e watchdoc	Selec <u>t</u> all	Ctrl+A
watchdog s ansion watc ision watch	Objects list editor 	F12

If your MBE system is equipped with a cluster, click on the chambers in the equipment library to display the cassettes. You can drag and drop the cassettes to the form.



Cassette object

## 13.7.2. Usual tab

### **Indicator object**



To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

Indicators can display different types of data:

- Numeric values
- Enumeration
- Strings

Object type: TObjIndicator

You can define the value to be displayed by an indicator by:

selecting a property in the Data explorer (Tool palette) typing a value directly into the text box (Tool palette) entering a new value in the indicator (users) assigning a value using any script throughout Crystal XE program

The displayed value is stored in the *Value* property (*Advanced* tab). When the specified property can be written, users can modify its value by entering the new value in the indicator.

The indicator object is automatically accompanied with a title:

	MyForm
<ul> <li>♥ Title / Caption</li> <li>Text to display</li> <li>MyIndicator</li> <li>▲ Font</li> </ul>	0

To hide the title, leave the field text box empty as follows:



### Value to display

### Property

Define a property to be displayed by clicking on the following icon to select the desired property in the Data explorer.

*Example:* Pyrometer measured value (C21DZ>Wafer\_temperature>Pyrometer>MV)

-	Pyrometer N	IV
	19810	
Ŀ		2
	111	•

You can also type the desired value directly into the Property text box:



The defined property corresponds to the indicator *IdentInput* property value (*Advanced* tab):

IdentInput	perature.Pyrometer.M\
IdentInput	123

### **User entry**

By default, user entries are disabled with indicators. You can enable users to modify a property value using an indicator (writable property only).

On the *Value* to display menu, check the following box to allow users to enter a value into the indicator:



Some property cannot be modified (read only). The entered value will not be displayed if a read only property has already been defined using the *Data explorer*.

The value to be modified corresponds to the *IdentOutput* property (Advanced tab).

When no output property has been specified, the value is written to the input property.

### Example: Modifying the cracker target setpoint

(C21DZ > As\_VAC500\_P1 > Cracker\_Z2 > TSP)



• The input tag property can be different from the output tag.

### Example:

Property to display (IdentInput): Value of the indicator 2 Property to write to (IdentOutput): Value of the indicator 3



### External script

With any script throughout *Crystal XE* program, you can assign a value to an indicator included in a form using the form and object identifying names.

Example: Assigning a value to the Indicator1 included in the HMIForm\_1 (MyForm):



The assigned value will not be displayed if a property has already been defined using the *Data explorer*.

### Customization

### Title

	*
Text to display	
Pyrometer MV	
Alignment	
Top Transparent backgrou	
Background color 🔲	

You can customize the title font  $\bigtriangleup$  Font as well as the title background (transparent, solid or gradient).

Use the drop-down list to select the desire title alignment.



Left

# Value

Property
C21DZ.As_VAC500_P1.Cra 🛃 🗛 Font
Allow user entry
Float format Test field
0.0 🔻 37.5
Alignment Center
Transparent background
Background color
Fixed width

You can also customize the displayed value font  ${\rm A}$  Font as well as the text box background (transparent, solid or gradient)

By default the text box width extends according to the title length.

MyForm	MyForm
Pyrometer MV	Pyrometer Measured Value
19823	19830

Check Fixed width and specify the desired width to freeze the text box:

Fixed width	80 3		
MyForm			x
Pyron	ieter Meas 19815	sured Value	

You can define the float format of the value using the following drop-down list:



You can also custom the float format by entering directly the format.

### Example of format:

T= 0.00 degrees" will display "T= 670.34 degrees

Lecimal number input will be allowed according to the selected format.

### Unit

Add a unit of measurement to the value using the following text box (Unit menu):

Example: Degrees Celsius (C°)



By default, the unit factor displayed is equal to 0.8 times the size of the font. To change this factor, go to *Advanced tab* > *Properties* and adjust the property *UnitySizeFact*.

### Chart

¥ Unit

Unit to display

By default, graphs have a linear scale. A logarithmic scale is a nonlinear scale usually used with large range of values. Each tick mark on the scale corresponds to the previous tick mark multiplied by a certain number.

On the *Chart* menu, check the following box to follow the indicator value in a logarithmic chart (Y axis):



After exiting the *Tool palette*, right-click on the indicator and select *Follow in a chart* to view the chart in a pop-up window:



Logarithmic Y axis

Linear scale

### Label object



Label objects are mainly used to display static text. They can also display values of a specified property.



To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

### Value to display

A label object can display two different types of value: static text or property. Select the desired type from the drop-down list:

Display type	
Text	-
Text	

### Static text

Type the text to be displayed directly into the text box:

¥ Text		
Text to dis MBE SYS	play TEM	🔄 🛕 Font
Display typ	e	
Text	-	

Example:



The text displayed by the label is stored in the Caption property. You can modify the text using any script throughout the program.

### Example:

REER Pascal editor [Lab	bel5.0nClick]	
File Edit Search To	ools Options Help	
🗎 🖄 📂 🔛	i 🎮 🎇 🕺 🌼 👪 🔃 🏾 Parameters:	
Main		
1 🗖 Begin		
2 app.f	forms.Form_1.Label1.Caption := 'MBE SYST	'EM';
< <u> </u>		۲.
2: 52	Modified Insert	
		Ok Cancel

### Property

Select Property in the drop-down list to display a property value:



Click on the following icon 1 to display the available properties in the Data explorer. *Example:* name of equipment (C21DZ>Si\_AB135D\_P3 > Name)

	Data explorer	
	C21DZ.Si_ABN135D_P3.Name	
	Properties	
MyForm	B→ S       Loading         B→ S       Degas_chamber         B→ S       As_VAC500_P1         B→ S       As_VAC500_P2         B→ S       As_VAC500_P3         B→ S       Temperature         B→ S       AlarmACK         B→ S       AlarmACK         B→ S       Be_ABN135D_P3         B→ S       Tag         B→ S       Be_ABN135D_P4         B→ S       Be_ABN135D_P4         B→ S       Be_ABN00DF_P6         B→ S       Al_ABN60DF_P6         B→ S       Al_ABN60DF_P8	Data type: String Value: Si_ABN135D_P3
▼ 	3896 items	Ok Cancel

• Select the desired float format from the following drop-down list:



### Customization

Click on the font icon Font to customize the font style (typeface, weight, size, color, etc.). Use the Background box to customize the label background style (transparent, solid or gradients):

Background style		
Solid color	-	
Color		

The following drop-down lists allow modifying the text alignment: horizontally (left, center or right) and vertically (top, center or bottom):



You can add a border to the text area and adjust the width using the following drop-down list:



Checking Wordwrap allows the text to move to a new line when reaching the end of the text area:



### Groupbox object



A group box is a visual object allowing you organize your form.

Object type: TMyGroupBox

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

Example:



Objects can be overlaid with other objects. The objects are overlaid on the form as you add them to the window. If the group box lies on top, right-click on the item and select *Send to back* or press on the F6 key.

<u>E</u> xit editing this object	
<u>↓</u> Align selected objects on grid	F2
∰ <u>G</u> rid options	F3
🖳 Bring to front	F5
📲 <u>S</u> end to back	F6
	F7 ▶
🖳 S <u>i</u> ze	F8
Undo delete C	
<mark>K⊈</mark> ut C	trl+X
<mark>№</mark> С <u>о</u> ру С	trl+C
Paste C	
<mark>∭</mark> _elete	Del
Selec <u>t</u> all C	trl+A
Objects list editor	

If you want to move the group box and the overlaying objects together, you must select the group box and all the objects before dragging them.

MyGroup

### Default group box

The group box is automatically accompanied with a **title**. To hide the title, leave the title input field empty.

On the *Basic* tab, you can customize: the title font style, the title alignment, the title background (gradient or solid), the box background (gradient, solid or picture).

• To define a **background image**, select *Picture* from the drop-down list, click on *Load picture* and then select the desired image file.



Check/uncheck Show shadow to display or hide the box shadow.

🔽 Show shadow

You can modify the border radius to create rounded corner or right angle group boxes using the advanced settings (Advanced tab).

On the *Properties* tab, select the *DiameterAngle* property and then type the new border radius value into the text box:

Basic Advar	nced	
Groupbox2: TMyG	iroupBox	•
Properties Events	8	
Properties	Values	
CustomHint	TCustomHint	
DiameterAngle	30	
Events	TEventList	
Font	TFont	-
	1	

30 pixels by default

Enter 0 to set right angle boxes.

Examples of DiameterAngle value:



Chart objects allow to graphically represent data using line graphs. You may have one or several chart objects included in one form. Each chart can display one or several lines (curves) acquiring data. For each curve you can define a property for the Y axis (X axis properties can be defined according to the selected type of chart).

Object type: TObjChart

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

Right-click on a chart to display the available options and modify the chart properties. To start/pause data acquisition, right-click on the chart and select/unselect *Acquiring data*.

To save the data, right-click on the chart, select *File* > Save as and then select the desired *File* format (CHR, CSV or BMP).

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about chart options, please refer to the chapter Chambers > section <u>Charts</u> in this manual.

# Design Title MyChart Background color Gradient vertical From To Other colors Border Grid Font

### Design

### Default settings

The *Design* menu allows you to customize your chart: title, font, background style and colors (solid or gradients), border color, grid color.

### Chart type





Select the desired chart type from the drop-down list:

℅ Chart type
y = f (time)
y = f(x)
y = f (time)
y = f (Relative time HH:MM:SS )
y = f (Relative time in seconde )
y = f (Relative time in minutes )
y = f (Relative time in hours )
y = f (Number of points)

- **y** = **f** (**x**): define Y property and X property
- Relative time: define only Y property (time on X axis)
- y = f (Number of point): define only Y property (tick marks correspond to the number of points on X axis)

### Logarithmic scale

By default graphs have a linear scale. A logarithmic scale is a nonlinear scale usually used with large range of values.

You can display charts using logarithmic scale for Y axis. With the y=f(x) chart type, you can use a logarithmic scale for Y axis or X axis only or for both. Check the following boxes accordingly:

¥ Chartt	ype				
y = f (time)					-
X axis type	Linear	•	0	Show le	gend
Y axis type	Logarithmic	-			

S Chart type	
y = f (x)	-
X axis type 🛛 Logarithmic 💌 📄 Show	legend
Y axis type Logarithmic 🖛	

### Show legend

Check Show legend to display the curve legends on the right side:





### Curves

➢ Curves and parameters	
Display lines only	-
Start acquiring data at startup	
Eurves setup dialog	

With line charts, the data is plotted by points connected by straight lines. You can display either lines or points only or you can display both lines and points.

### Display

Select the desired display option form the drop-down list:




#### Lines only



Points only



Lines and points

### **Curves setup**

Click on the following button to open the curves set up dialog box and set the chart's curves:

📆 Curves setup dialog ...



To **delete a curve**, select the curve to be deleted and click on the Delete button K Delete

After clicking on Add - Add

Enter the curve **name**:



Define a property for the Y axis

Type the desired property or click on the following icon to select a property in the *Data explorer*.

Example 1: Temperature measured value



#### Example 2: Indicator value



300	As_VAC	500_P1		MyCurve	Indicator 1 100
250 -		Λ			
200-		_/\			
150-					
100-	_/				
50-					
0-	].				
13:15:04	13:15:47 1	3:16:30 13:17:*	14 13:17:57	x	

If the y=f(x) chart type has been selected; you can define a property for the X axis:



The **trigger** is a conditional statement that, if proved true, plots a point on the chart.

By default, a point is plotted each second.

Trigger :	
Laps(1000)	

If *Smart optimization* is enabled, the curve displays the points expressing a change in value only. To enable/disable *Smart optimization*, right click on a chart and then select or unselect it:



You can plot points on the chart using the chart functions in any scripts throughout the program.

 $\rightarrow$  For more details about chart functions, please refer to the Help menu. Click on the Help menu (menu bar) and then select Scripts manual to open Crystal XE Help window.

He	lp
	Operator manual
	<u>S</u> cripts manual
	<u>C</u> ontact
	Versions history
	C <u>h</u> eck for updates
	<u>L</u> icense
	<u>A</u> bout

In the tree structure, expand *Scripts > Functions reference > Charts* to display the chart functions:

🗆 🚺 Charts

Chart.ShowCurve
Chart.InsertLabel
Chart.CopyToClipBoard
Chart.SetScaleLimit
Chart.GetCount
Chart.CurveColor
Chart.AddPoint
Chart.DeletePoint
Chart.OadFromFile
Chart.ClearCurve
Chart.ClearCurve
Chart.ClearAll
Chart.GetX
Chart.GetY
Chart.SetY

Function details appear in the box located on the right side of the window.

# Scales and units

### Scales

On the Scales menu, set the ranges of minimum and maximum values for each axis:

Scales
-X axis
Auto scale X
Xmin 41275
Xmax 43663.7
Y axis
Auto scale Y
Ymin 0
Ymax 100

Default scales: Y = f(x)

By default **Auto scale** is enabled: the last points of the running curves are always displayed automatically. Each time a curve reaches the end of a chart window the X axis is recalculated. Uncheck the box to disable *Auto scale* option.

### Units

On the Units menu, enter a unit of measurement for each axis.

♦ Units	
X unit <mark>X</mark>	
Y unit Y	

To hide a unit, leave the corresponding field empty.

Example: Seconds (X) and Celsius degrees (Y)





Plotting points by using scripts

The chart object is provided with functions to interact with the object from a script.

LoadFrom*File* SaveTo*File* ClearCurve ClearAll GetX GetY SetX SetY AddPoint DeletePoint CurveColor

#### GetCount SetScaleLimit CopyToClipBoard InsertLabel ShowCurve

 $\rightarrow$  For more information about these functions, please refer to the help (menu bar), in the section Scripts > Functions reference > Charts. You can also find the documentation attached in annex.

## Script object



Script objects allow you to execute a specific task at a given time or permanently in the background.

Several objects can be executed at the same time in the same form or in several forms.

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

Example of several scripts in a form:



## Script design



The caption of the script oject is optionnal.

The color of the caption and other font settings can be changed by pressing the Font button. It is possible to make the object invisible by uncheckin the box "Visible"

Turn on the "transparent background" to clear the background.

Some buttons can be made invisible.

VisibleButtons	
Start 🗸	
🕑 Stop	
🕑 Pause	
Code	

# Script content

⊗ Scripts	
OnExecute Execute at startup	

Click on the button to edit the script.

You can also double click on the scrip object to open the script editor.

To write a script running in the background, you can use an infinite loop such as:

Repeat (... code...) Until false;

Example of script:

XE Pascal e	litor [Script1.OnExecute]	
File Edit S	earch Tools Options Help	
📄 🖄 📂	🐑 🔛 🕖 🎆 🖾 😵 🔀 📴 Parameters: 💽 💌 💌	
Main		
1	// This script is used to send the temperature of the cells to the Laytec pyrometer	A
2	Var	
3	i : integer;	
4	w : word;	
5 🖵	Begin	
6	// Define the number of cells	
7	LogEvent(0,790,0,1,'Laytec script is running in the user view');	
8	GROWTH.Regulators.Laytec.Tags.Epinet1.Cells_count := 12;	
9		
10	Repeat	
11	// Update Shutter status	
12	w := 0;	
13	<pre>if (GROWTH.Be_151D_P1.shutter.State=1) then w := setbit(w,0);</pre>	
14	<pre>if (GROWTH.Fe_151D_P2.shutter.State=1) then w := setbit(w,1);</pre>	
15	<pre>if (GROWTH.Ru_HT12_P3.shutter.State=1) then w := setbit(w,2);</pre>	
16	<pre>if (GROWTH.Rh_HT12_P4.shutter.State=1) then w := setbit(w,3);</pre>	
17	<pre>if (GROWTH.Al_150DF_P5.shutter.State=1) then w := setbit(w,4);</pre>	
18	<pre>if (GROWTH.Ga_ABI500_P6.shutter.State=1) then w := setbit(w,5);</pre>	
19	<pre>if (GROWTH.In_ABI500_P7.shutter.State=1) then w := setbit(w,6);</pre>	
20	<pre>if (GROWTH.CBR4_LTI1_P8.shutter.State=1) then w := setbit(w,7);</pre>	
21	<pre>if (GROWTH.Hydride_HTI_P9.shutter.State=1) then w := setbit(w,0);</pre>	
22	<pre>if (GROWTH.Si_151D_P10.shutter.State=1) then w := setbit(w,9);</pre>	1
23	<pre>if (GROWTH.In_ABI500_P11.shutter.State=1) then w := setbit(w,10);</pre>	
24	<pre>if (GROWTH.Al_150DF_P12.shutter.State=1) then w := setbit(w,11);</pre>	
25	GROWTH.Regulators.Laytec.Tags.Epinetl.Shutter_Status := w;	
26		V 1
< 1		>
	Insert	
	Ok	Cancel

## **Execute a script**

To start the script automatically when the form is open, check the box "Execute at startup"



Use of the buttons:



Stop the script



II Pause / Resume



Open the debug window

### Debug a script

To open the debug window, click on the button



Example of debug window

The content of local varaibles are display in the right part of the window. These value cannot be changed.

# 13.7.3. ON/OFF tab

There are two types of *On/Off object*:

- Confirmation button.
- Light.

#### Both objects:

Both objects can have two different states, by default On and Off but your are free to enter what you want.

Customize the caption displayed by each state as well as the background color:

Text ON On	Color ON
Text OFF Off	Color OFF 📕
A Font	

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

### **Confirmation button**



Confirmation buttons are mainly used to turn a state on or off. As a precaution, the button must be clicked twice within a certain period of time (1 second by default). When you first click on a confirmation button, a progress bar appears. Click again before the time is up.

X	MyForm	n 💷	x	
		Off		
	-			
L	_			J

## Design

There are three ways to represent a confirmation button.



Rectangle	
5	Off On Off
Ellipse	
•	Off On Off
0 1	
Custom	
	VARABLE CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR DATABASED BASED CONTRACTOR C CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR CONT

## **Properties**

On the *Properties* menu, you can set three properties:

- **Input tag**: the input tag corresponds to the *IdentInput* property value (*Advanced* tab). The button is turned On or Off according the defined property value.
- **Output tag**: the output tag corresponds to the *IdentOutput* property value (*Advanced* tab). The value is written to the specified property when the button is clicked (invert the Input value).
- **Error tag**: the error tag corresponds to the *IdentError* property value (*Advanced* tab). The button displays an alert state (grey with alert icon) according to the value of the defined property.

Input Tag (Reading)	
	Ŀ,
Output Tag (Writing)	
	Ŀ.
Mode for Output Tag	
Toggle 🔫	
Error Tag (Beading)	
	Ŀ.
,	

You can define same or different properties for the three tags. You can assign properties with enumeration or numeric values. The button is turned On when the value is True or not equal to zero and Off when the value is False or equal to zero.

You can define the value to display by:

• Typing the property directly into the input field:

#### Example 1: Indicator value (input tag) Input Tag (Reading) Ŀ. Indicator1.Value X X MyForm MyForm Indicator 1 Indicator 1 0 Off On 1

Indicator value = 0

Example 2: Indicator value (error tag)



Indicator value > 0

On the State menu, the *Error* box must be checked to enable Error state:

State	🗹 Enabled
MyForm	
U Off	Indicator 1

Indicator value > 0

Selecting a property in the Data explorer



Example: State of the shutter (input)



Shutter is off

Shutter is on

• **Specifying a property** using any scripts throughout the program:

REER Pascal editor [Bit]	3tn1.OnClick]			•••
File Edit Search To	ools Options Help			
		💑 🚉 Param	eters:	
Main				
1 Begin 2 app.f	orms.form 1.BtnCo	nfirm1.IdentInp	ut := 'indicator1	.value';
3 End;				
< _m_				•
2: 64	Modified Insert			
			Ok	Cancel

Example: indicator value (input)

### State



 Check the following box to display the On state and uncheck the box to display the Off state:



• Check the *Error* box to display *Error state*:

Fror E

The icon turns grey and an alert icon appears (red icon), whether the button is turned On or Off:



IsError: True

• Enable/Disable the confirmation button by checking/unchecking the following box:



When the confirmation button is disabled, the icon turns grey, whether the button is turned On or Off:



Enabled: False

• These properties can be modified using any script throughout the program.

*Example:* Disabling a confirmation button

REFER Pascal editor [Bit	Btn1.OnClick]	008
File Edit Search T	ools Options Help	
🔎 🖄 📂 🔛 🥃	🖡 🚧 🎇 💋 🏇 🔀 📜 Parameter	s: 🗾 🖉 📃
Main		
1 🗖 Begin		
2 app.: 3 End;	forms.form_1.BtnConfirm1.Enabled :=f	alse;
<		4
2: 47	Modified Insert	
		Ok Cancel

You can edit a script to be executed whenever the state turns On or Off using respectively the *OnClickOn* and *OnClickOff* events (*Advanced* tab)

#### LIGHT



Unlike confirmation buttons, Light objects are not designed to be interacted with. They can indicate two states (by default On and Off).

#### Object type: TObjLight

You can define one property storing enumeration or numeric value. The light is turned On when the value is *True* or not equal to zero and Off when the value is *Fals*e or equal to zero.

### Design



Select the desired shape between rectangles (default) or ellipses using the drop-down list. Border color of the *Light* objects can be modified:

M 🔝	yForm	- 🗆 🗙	
	ON	OFF	



Default lights (rectangles)

Example: shutters (ellipses)

### **Properties**

The defined property corresponds to the IdentInput property value (Advanced tab).

Specify the desired property: By selecting a property in the *Data explorer* 

Example: Security agents state Loading.Cluster.Port.AllAgentDisabled

Property		
Tag	Loading.Cluster.Port.AllAgentD	Ŀ.

By typing a property into the input field:

#### Example: Indicator value

Indicator1.value	Ē.
	Indicator1.value





Indicator value > 0

Indicator value = 0

By specifying the property using any script throughout the program:

*Example:* Indicator value

Res Pascal edito	or [BitBtn1.OnClic	٢]			
File Edit Sear	rch Tools Option	ns Help			
🔰 🗎 📂 🖡	💆 🔛 🛛 🎊 🕌	🗵 🎲 👪 😟	Parameters:		
Main					
1 🖵 Be	gin				
2	app.forms.form	1.Light1.ider	ntinput := 'indi	cator1.valur';	
3 - En	id;				
<					E E
2: 60	Modified	Insert			
				Ok	Cancel

Check the following to display the On state by or uncheck the box to display the Off state:

🔽 Set ON	🗖 Set ON
lsOn: True	IsOn: False

# 13.7.4. Windows tab

## Standard button object

Button Standard button

Standard buttons are used to perform a certain action. The action to be performed is specified using an *Onclick* event.

Object type: TObjBitBtn

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

## **Onclick event**

On the Scripts menu, click on the following icon in the Pascal editor:

OnClick	

The script is executed each time the button is clicked.

Example 1: Starting a loaded recipe in the growth chamber

REFE Pascal editor [Bit	Btn1.OnClick]	
File Edit Search T	iools Options Help 1 🚧 🎇 🖾 豫 🔝 Parameters:	× .
1 Begin 2 C21D2 3 End;	Z.Recipe.Start(0);	Þ
2: 25	Modified Insert	Cancel

Example 2: Opening a form

Ref Pascal editor [BitBtn2.0nClick]	
File Edit Search Tools Options Help	•
<pre> 1 Begin 2 FileOpen('form-demo','',0); 3 End; 4 III </pre>	Þ
2: 30 Modified Insert	Ok Cancel

## **Customization**

Type the **caption** of the button into the text box and customize the font:



To hide the caption, leave the field empty as follows:

⊗ Design	
Caption	
	🛕 Font

Buttons can have a background image:

Click on the file icon to select the desired image file: Picture : Copen



#### Example:



#### Memo object



Multiline edit boxes allow the user to enter more than one line of text. They are appropriate for representing lengthy information.

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

### **Design and content**

You can change the design and the content at design time using the settings interface:



The Ctl3D option determines whether a control has a three-dimensional (3-D) or two-dimensional look.

### Use of the object at runtime

In this text box, you can edit a multiline text at run time. For example, have you added a TMemo Memo1 to your form Form1, you can use Memo1.Add('this is a singleline text'); to add a String.

List of all functions available at runtime:

¥ Help
Functions
- ADD(S): add an new item
<ul> <li>DELETE(Id): remove an item</li> </ul>
- CLEAR: clear all
<ul> <li>INSERT(i,S): Insert an item</li> </ul>
-ITEMS(i): get an item
<ul> <li>INDEXOF(S): get the position of an item</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>SAVETOFILE(FileName)</li> </ul>
- LOADFROMFILE(FileName)

See the script's online help for more information on all of these functions.

# Listbox object

Listbox
---------

List boxes usually used to show a (scrollable) list of (short) strings and allow user to select one or more item.

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

### Design and content

You can change the design and the content at design time using the settings interface:

⊗ Design	
A Font	Background color 🔳
Ctl 3D Items:	
First line Second line Other line	
Item index -1	8

The Ctl3D option determines whether a control has a three-dimensional (3-D) or two-dimensional look.

### Use of the object at runtime

- To add a new item at run time, use the Add function.
- To know what the current selected item is, read the property ItemIndex.
- To change the current selected item at runtime, change the property ItemIndex.

List of all functions available at runtime:



See the script's online help for more information on all of these functions.

# Checkbox object



Checkboxes allow the user to choose a particular setting. Checking the box would enable the option while unchecking it would disable it. You may have several checkboxes in one form, which are independent of each other.

#### Object type: TObjCheckbox

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

## **Checked property**

Use the Check property menu to specify when the box should be checked.

Checked property	
Tag	
	ŧ.
Invert	

By default the box is checked when the defined property value is *True* or not equal to zero and unchecked when the value is False or equal to zero. You can invert it by checking the following box:

✓ Invert

Specify the checked property by:

• Selecting a property in the Data explorer.

*Example:* Default or custom template (recorder)

Checked property	
Tag	
	Ŀ
Invert	



Default template is used

х

Custom template is used

Typing a property directly into the input field.

## Example: Indicator value

S Checked prop	erty						
Tag							
Indicator1.Value			Ŀ,				
Invert							
Form	<u>855</u>	×		<b>XE</b> Form			×
Titl	e				Title	- 23	
0					1		
Che	ckbox				Checkbox	¢	

Indicator value = 0 (unckecked)

Indicator value > 0 (checked)

# Script

Use the *Scripts* section to edit a script to be executed when the box is checked (*OnClick event*).

* :	cripts	
	OnClick	

Example: Turning a Light object on



### **Radio button object**



Radio buttons allow the user to select only one option among a predefined set of options. All radio buttons included in a form are associated with each other and only one button can be checked within one form.

Object type: TObjRadio

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

#### Design

For each radio button, type the desired *caption* and customize the font:

⊗ Design	
Caption Radio button	A Font
Checked	

Check the following box to display the radio button checked by default:



# Script to execute after a click

Use the Scripts menu to edit the script to be executed when the button is clicked:



Example: Turning a Light object On or Off

File E	dit Search Tools Options Help
1 2	💕 🔮 🔒 🗛 😤 🏂 🅸 🐻
Main	
1	Begin
	End;



When Radio 1 checked the Light 1 is on



When Radio 2 is checked the Light 1 is off

# Combobox object



A combo box is a commonly used graphical user interface control. Traditionally, it is a combination of a drop-down list or list box and a single-line editable textbox, allowing the user to either type a value directly or select a value from the list. The term "combo box" is sometimes used to mean "drop-down list

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

### **Design and content**

You can change the design and the content at design time using the settings interface:

♦ Design	
A Font	
Items:	
	-
Item index -1	
Style csDropDownList 🔻	
Style csDropDownList 🔻	

#### Style

csDropDown	Creates a drop-down list with an edit box for manually entered text. All items are strings of the same height.	Enter a text here
csDropDownList	Creates a drop-down list with no edit box; the user cannot enter text manually. All items are strings of the same height.	Second item First item Second item Other one
csSimple	Creates an edit box with a fixed list (list box) underneath. The length of the list is determined by the Height of the combo box.	Second item

### Property

Specify a property to be selected from the combo box. The value of the specified property will select the appropriate item according to its index.

Click on the following icon to select a property in the *Data explorer* or type the desired property into the text box:

#### Example: Indicator value

The value of the indicator selects the items according to their indexes:

MyForm	🔀 My
tem 1	
Indicator 1 0	

Ham 2		
item 2		
Indicate	or 1	
	Indicate	Indicator 1

#### Use of the object at runtime

- To add a new item at run time, use the Add function.
- To know what the current selected item is, read the property ItemIndex.
- To change the current selected item at runtime, change the property ItemIndex.



List of all functions available at runtime:





Example 1: Controlling the execution of a loaded recipe in the growth chamber





Example 2: Displaying the index of the selected item using an indicator.



See the script's online help for more information on all these functions.

### Progress bar object



A progress bar is usually used as a graphical representation of a running task or a changing value. The bar is gradually filled as the task progresses or the value increases.

#### Object type: TObjProgressBar

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

#### **Position property**

Click on the following icon to select a property in the Data explorer

Example: Cracker output power



Cracker Output power

You can specify a static position by typing it directly into the input field:

Example:



## Range

Use the Range box to set the ranges of minimum and maximum values.

By default the bar is set in a range of 0 to 100, allowing you to visualize values expressed as a percentage, such as output power.



0

You can also enter a property for the field min and max.

Example: Cracker output power min OP and max OP

This can be used to define the minimum and maximum output power of a temperature regulator.

Min = C21DZ.As\_VAC500\_P1.Cracker\_Z2.MinOP Max = C21DZ.As\_VAC500\_P1.Cracker\_Z2.MaxOP



# Customization

Select either horizontal or vertical bars using the drop-down list:

Orientation Horizontal Horizontal Vertical							
	XE Form	- 0	×				
		ОР					
Form - U X							
ОР							
Horizontal	Vertic	cal					
Select the desired colors:							
- progress color:							

- background color:

# 13.7.5. OTHERS

#### Image object



Image objects allow you to display different types of image files, which can be moved around the entire form like any other object. You can interact with image objects by specifying events (Advanced tab).

Object type: TObjImage

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

Drag and drop the image object to the form:



#### Load an image

In the tool palette, click on Open to select the desired image file: Picture Den The possible file formats are: jpg, jpeg, bmp, png, ico, emf, wmf and gif.

### Stretch

When the Stretch box is checked Stretch the image shrinks or extends to adapt the size of the object.

### **Transparent background**

Check Transparent background to hide the image background

Transparent background (bottom left pixel)



Default image

Transparent background

Iransparency is only available with bitmap images (.bmp)

### Rotation

Rotation can be define at design time or at runtime.

At the time of conception, modify the rotate angle in degree.



By using the script, modify the RotateAngle property.

For example, this can be used to represent a rotating substrate holder.

# Script to execute after a click

Use the Scripts pane to edit the script to be executed when the object is clicked:



## Animated image object



Animated image objects or multiple image objects can display one picture from a list or make an animation with several pictures.

#### Object type: TObjImageMultiple

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

Two modes of design are possible.

- With a list of images
- With a single image (image block) that is split into several parts.

### Design with a list of images

In the Tool palette, click on the tab "Image by image"



The list contains all the images to display. The current image to be displayed is indicated by the "ImageIndex" property.

Use the Add button, to add new image in the list, Del to delete an image, Up and Down to move it and Export to export the selected image to a file.

All the image must be the same size. If you add an image of a different size, it will be resized.

### Design with a single image

The image can be divided into several images, usually representing a state (shutter state, recipe state, etc.). You can switch from one image to another by setting a property that will select the appropriate index. Specify events to allow users to interact with animated images (*Advanced* tab).

### Example: Animating On and Off buttons

Create an image composed of two buttons (equal size):



If you want to view the whole image first, use the panel at the bottom of the interface to adjust the width (W) and height (H) corresponding to your image.



You can hide the image background by checking *Transparent background*:



Select Horizontal images if your images are aligned horizontally or Vertical images if they are aligned vertically. In this example select Horizontal images.

*	Design			
	Picture	🕞 Open	Export	
		Horizontal im		
		Vertical images Horizontal images		

Set the width of your separate images. In this example, each button measures 150 pixels:



Adjust the size accordingly using the panel at the bottom of the interface:



Only the first image should be displayed.

#### **Display settings**

#### Transparent background (bottom left pixel)

Check the "Transparent background" box to use the color identified by the lower left pixel of the image as transparent color.

#### Allow rotation Rotate angle 0

Check the "Allow rotation" box if you want to rotate the image. The size of the image will be reduced to fit in the rectangle of the object during rotation.

# Animation



On the *Animation* pane, adjust the default index using the spinner to specify the image to be displayed by default. The first image corresponds to index 0, the second to index 2 and so on.

#### Selection of the current image (optional):



This is only useful if no property is defined for "IdentInput" (Property of index) and the auto-animation is not enabled.

### Link the current image index to another property (optional):



If you define a tag for the "index property", the current image to be displayed will be represented by the content of this tag.

Click on the following icon to open the Data explorer and define a **property** for the animated image:

#### Example: Shutter state property



Index 0 (Shutter is off)

Images change when the shutter is on or off



Index 1 (shutter is on)
#### Auto animation



Check the "Activate automatic animation" box and define a delay in ms to periodically change the image.

Activation or deactivation can be activated by a script on any event.

In auto-animation mode, no Tag property are required to be set. The images will switch automatically at the defined delay.

Use the Scripts menu to edit a **script** to be executed when the user clicks on the image (OnClick event).



Example of use:

An animated image can be used to display the **status of a valve**. In that case, three images can be defined: valve red (closed), valve green (open) and valve gray (undefined). When users click on the image, the valve state is changed.

## **Rotary button**



The rotary button object allows you to modify any value from a predefined minimum value to a predifined maximum value.

#### Design

♦ Desig	gn
Title	Button 🛕 Font
	🖉 Transparent bk
	Graduation 🔳
Pointer	6 🗧 10 🕃 (Position and length)
Button	Style 1 🔻
RGB	

The text of the title and the font use for the title can be modified here.

Title Button

#### 5 default styles are available

Style 1	Button 
Style 2	Button
Style 3	Button
Style 4	Button
Style 5	Button 

By selecting the "Custom" style, it is possible to choose a custom image.



Several file format are available: jpg, jpeg, bmp, emf and wmf.

#### Value to display



By activating the "Display value" box, the value will be displayed below the rotary button. It is possible to define the display format and to select the font of the value.

#### **Display range**

¥ Ran	ge	
Min	0	
Мах	100 📴	1
	Reverse	

The display range can be either predefined using the min and max constants, or defined by tag properties. To select a tag, click on the data explorer button.

#### Wheel

⊗ Wheel		
Ratio 10		

This defines the pitch of the mouse wheel when the cursor is located on the object.

#### Position

	erty	
Position	45	μ.

The position can be either a constant value or a tag property.

If you choose a tag, the position of the rotary button will be defined by the value contained in the tag. If the value of the tag changes, the position of the button will automatically change.

## Lines and pipes



## Design

This object is only visual. There is no interaction with the user.

⊗ Design	
Background mode	
Gradient AUTO	
From color	To color 🔳
Line width	
10	2
Mirror when oblique	e line

The color and other properties can be changed by using the scripts.

The orientation is defined when designing the form. It depends of the ratio of the rectangle.



## Cursor



The cursor object allows to modify any value using a "mixer" type cursor

## Design

♦ Des	sign
Titl	e Cursor1
	Background 🔲 🗖 Transparent bkj
	Graduation
Buttor	Style 2 💌

The text of the title and the font use for the title can be modified in the design pane. Colors can also be changed in this pane and it is possible to make the background transparent.

Several styles of button are provided:

Style 1	
Style 2	Cursor1
Style 3	Cursor1

#### Orientation

The orientation is automatic when designing the form. Just resize the object to change the orientation.

Horizontal	Cursor1
Vertical	Cursor 1

#### Value to display

	Display value			
Format 0.	.0	-	A Font	

By activating the "Display value" box, the value will be displayed below the object. It is possible to define the display format and to select the font of the value.

### **Display range**

¥ Rang	ge	
Min	0	Ŀ
Мах	100	Ŀ
	Reverse	

The display range can be either predefined using the min and max constants, or dynamical defined by tag properties. To select a tag, click on the data explorer button.

#### Wheel

¥ Wheel	
Ratio 10	

This defines the pitch of the mouse wheel when the cursor is located on the object.

## Position

¥ Prop	erty	
Position	45	Ŀ

The position can be either a constant value or a tag property.

If you choose a tag, the position of the cursor will be defined by the value contained in the tag. If the value of the tag changes, the cursor position will automatically change.

## Window splitter



A splitter is an object that can be placed on a form as vertical or horizontal bar to separate sub-panels functionally.

The control can be used as a visual separator between two halves of your form and allows the user of your application to move it either vertically or horizontally.

When the form is divided into two parts, only two objects should be used to separate the form. One object must be aligned on one side and the other must be aligned throughout the customer area (client area).

## Example with two charts and vertical splitter:

Form		1 <u>111</u>	
Y <i>Chart</i>	100 <sup>-</sup> Chart		
90	90		
80	80-		
70	70-		
60 -	60-		
50 -	50		
40 -	40		
30 -			
20	20		
10 -	10		
0- 01/01/13 28/09/15 24/06/18	01/01/13 16/05/14 28/09/15 09/00	2/17 24/06	j/18 06/11/19 X

In this example, the splitter devides the form into two parts. A left part and a right part. The vertical devider can be moved from left to right.

- How to design this form?
  - 1) Create a new form
  - 2) Add a chart in the form
  - 3) Change the property "align" of the chart to "alLeft"
  - 4) Add a splitter to the form
  - 5) Add another chart to the form.
  - 6) Change the property "align" of the chart to "alClient"

The width of the splitter can also be modified in the properties tab of the Tool palette.

## Another example with a horizontal splitter:

XE Form				_	
Y		Chart	50		<i></i>
100-					
90 -					
80-					
70 -					
60-					
50 -					
40 -					
30 -					
20 -					
10-					
0-					
01/01/13	16/05/14	28/09/15	09/02/17	24/06/18	06/11/19 X
100 -		Chart			
80-					
60 -					
40-					
20-					
0- 01/01/13	16/05/14	28/09/15	09/02/17	24/06/18	06/11/19 X

#### Video camera object

Video camera

Video camera objects allow displaying, in real time, video images being filmed by a video camera connected to your computer.

You can connect several devices and then several video objects.



#### Object type: TObjCamera

#### Quick start

9

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

Form		×
Camera 1		ġ.

Drap and drop the Video camera object to the form:

Then, check the box "Start at loading"

Exit the edition of the form.



## **Video properties**



Customize the camera title and the title font.



Select the desired device in the drop-down list:

Device Default

The list displays all camera devices connected to your computer and recognized by *Windows*. *Default* device corresponds to the device set as default by your *Windows* system.

When *Stretch* is checked, the video automatically shrinks or extends to fit the object size.

#### Stretch (auto size)

When Start at loading is checked, the video starts automatically after exiting the design of the form and after loading the form:

#### Start at loading

When *Keep* aspect ratio is checked, the width and height proportions are constrained to maintain the aspect ratio of the video camera and avoid distortion of the image:

#### 🔽 Keep aspect ratio

To make the video size filling the window, go in the advanced tab, then change the property *Align to alClient*.



#### Video control panel

At runtime, click on the following icon *(icor)*, located in the top left-hand corner of the Video camera object, to display the video control panel:



Several filters are provided with the video object.

#### Open button

You can apply a filter to a still image or a live video image. To apply a filter to a still image, stop the video and press on the Open button. Several types of image files are possible: bmp, jpg, png, gif, tif and tiff.

#### Live video

To start the video live, just push on the Live video button. The selected filter will be applied and displayed in the central video output. The following filters are available:



**Snapshot:** Click on the Snapshot button to save the frame into an bitmap file in the record sub directory of the project.

#### **Record video**

The video is recorded in a .AVI file. During video acquisition all the image are not displayed to the screen.

Video options



Amp proc vidéo Cont	rôle de la caméra	
		Automatique
Zoom	ı	- 🗔 🖬
Mise au point	ı	- 🗔 🔳 👘
Exposition		
<u>Q</u> uverture (Iris)	I	- 📃 🖬
Panoramique	I	=
Inclinaison	I	- 🔲 🔳
Pellicule	ı	- 🗔 🖬
<u>C</u> ompensatior luminosité faible	✓ Par <u>d</u> éfaut	

#### Video parameters

Propriétés 🛛 🛞
Format du flux
Format vidéo Compression
Standard vidéo : None
Eréq. d'images : 30.000
Setourner horizt.         Cliché         Intervalle trame P :           Espace de couleurs/compression :
MJPG ▼ Taille de sortie : Qualité :
OK Annuler Appliquer

## Video analysis

#### Properties tab



Here the data are given as an indication.

The frame skipped information is an image counter that has not been processed since the start of the video display. To reset this counter to zero, stop the video and restart it.



Line analysis

A scan line is a single row of pixels in the video image. The intensity of each pixel is displayed in a chart. Click on the central video and hold down the right mouse button to adjust the horizontal line with the mouse. The graphic just above the video shows the scan line for the selected line.

See the screen shot bellow:



#### Histogram

An **image histogram** is a type of **histogram** that acts as a graphical representation of the tonal distribution in a digital **image**. It plots the number of pixels for each tonal value. By looking at the **histogram** for a specific **image** a viewer will be able to judge the entire tonal distribution at a glance.



## Image processing using scripts



Example of form:



In this example, push on the Start button (the script calls the function "Start") and wait for the image to be displayed.

Push on the iGetimage, this will freeze the image.

Push on iContrast, this will execute the script: Camera1.icontrast(2000);



Display after iConstrat

Push on the button iGamma will modify again the picture. Push on the button iRelease to restore the live video.

For more details on these functions, refer to the script online help.

## **Cassette object**



Each cassette object is associated with a chamber. *Crystal XE* automatically displays the numbers of the platens defined in the hardware configuration.

Project configuration	
File Templates Tools	
ය 📁 🖬	
Main Architecture Coading Equipment Devices Coading Coading Equipment Devices Coading Coading Equipment Devices Coading Coading Equipment Equipment Equ	Chamber Parameters Chamber Name Loading Chamber description Visible pages User View System System System System System System System System Recipe Recipe Recipes This recipe is executed always before to run a recipe Pre-recipe Pre-recipe Pre-recipe Pre-recipe Charts Recipes This recipe is executed always when the main recipe is terminated Post-recipe Parameters used for platen automation Number of platens Chamber type Intropocess (load/unload) This recipe is executed before the platen to be placed in the chamber Recipe file name Chamber type Recipe System Chamber type Chamber
	Restore default data when dosing Ok Cancel

Object type: TObjCassette

To add this object on a form, you can simply select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.

• Drag and drop a cassette object to the form



Select the desired chamber using the drop-down list:



By default, the name of the selected chamber is displayed on top of the cassette. You can hide the chamber name by unchecking the following box:



Customize the cassette font and background color:



Adjust the platen height value using the spinner:



## Container



A container is a group of objects.

To add a container on a form, select it on the component palette, hold down the mouse button and release the button on the form.



Right click on the object (see screenshot above) and select "Edit this object"

Move new objects into the container

_	As	-
	0.0	
Ga1		Ga2
0.0		0.0

To exit the edition of the container, you can either click on the button "End of editing" located on top of the Tool palette window (see screenshot bellow)



or right click on the container and select "Exit editing this object" (see screenshot bellow)



# 14. PLATEN AUTOMATION

The *Automation* tab allows you to create, edit or run production batches. The *Automation* feature is available only with the MBE systems that are equipped with a cluster or a pick and place transportation system (like MBE49, MBE6000, MBE7000 or MBE8000).

In *Crystal XE*, a batch allows you to organize the operations of several platens in the MBE system.

For each platen, you can define its path by selecting:

- The first chamber (generally a no process chamber like a load)
- One or several process chambers and at least one recipe to be executed in.
- The last chamber (generally a no process chamber like an unload)

For each of these steps, you can also define the position of the platen in the cassette.

With a MBE49, MBE6000 and MBE7000 you are not free to move the platen anywhere. You must follow a path.

The default path is:

- Load 1
- Move the platen to the preparation chamber and execute the preparation recipe.
- Move the platen to the growth chamber and execute the growth recipe.
- Move the platen to the load 1 or load 2 if it exists.

With a cluster there is no such constraint.

#### File location and format

The batch is saved as a **'.batch' file** (or **'.pas'** if it is a script) that can be accessed in your project directory > *Batch*. The batch file format is XML (or text file if it is a script) but we do not recommend to edit directly the XML file.

To browse the batch directory, click on the *File* menu, select *Browse project directory* and go in the batch sub-directory.

There are two types of batch:

- Using the batch editor (.batch file)
- Using the script editor (.pas file)

If the transfer machine is a cluster, you can choose between these two options.

For pick-and-place transfer machines (MBE49, MBE6000, 7000, 8000), you can only choose the batch editor.

#### Panel control:



## Create a new batch

If your transfer machine is a cluster, you will have two possible choices:

New batch (Using batch editor)

New script (advanced mode)

For **pick and place** transfer machines (MBE49, MBE6000, 7000, 8000), you'll go straight to the batch editor.



Load a batch file in the batch engine.



Reload the current batch file.

Edit the current batch either with the batch editor, or with the script editor (depending of the batch type).



Open the script debug window to follow the execution of the script.



Remove the batch from the batch engine.

**Edit a batch** Edit a other batch file using either the batch editor or the script editor (depending of the batch extendion .batch or .pas)



Start the current selected batch.



Continue moving each platen that is stamped as used. The path of each platen can be changed by clicking on it.



After a user confirmation, this will stop the execution of the current batch. The stop will take effect at the end of the current movement.

If a recipe is running, the recipe will continue normally until the end of execution.



Pause or resume the batch. The Pause will take effect at the end of the current movement.

## 14.1. Editing batch using the batch editor

## Edit an existing batch

Click on the Edit button *Edit a batch* and select the desired file.

Or you can click on the *File* icon *if* to load the desired file and then click on the pencil icon *if* to open it in the Batch editor.



Clicking on the following icon elevents the Batch name *File* input field but does not delete the batch *File*.

## Batch editor overview

The platens are displayed in the pane located on the left side of the Batch editor.



Use the checkboxes to select the platen to be used. You can also use the toggle swith "Enabled for automatic mode".

## Platen path

The path of the platen in the MBE system is composed of several configurable steps:

Steps				
#	Chamber	Position	Recipe	Post recipe
1>>	LL1	1		
2	Degassing	1	Degassing\degas.rcp	
3	MBE1	1	MBE1\test.rcp	
4	LL1	1		

For each step, select your choice from the corresponding drop-drop list:

• Chamber (required)

The platen will be picked up and dropped off in this chamber. The list shows only chambers connected to the cluster.

• Position (required)

The position in the cassette (Only if several platens can be stored in the chamber).

- **Recipe** (optional)
- The recipe to be executed in the selected chamber
- **Post recipe** (optional)

A second recipe will start as soon as the first recipe ends.

If the batch contains an error, a message warns you (in red) and the platen icon turns red as follows:

羅 Batch editor [Noname]				•••
File				
📄 📂 🚽 Save options as default				
Description Editor Options Batch process options				
Crasting 20/07/2024 14:24:29	<b>5</b>			
Title	Comments			
Author				
Company				
All Enabl	ed for automatic mode			
Platens list No path definer				
LL1,01 (Order 1) Order	2 🔽			
LL1,02 (Order 2) Steps				
UL1,03 (Order 3) # Chamber	Position	Recipe	Post recipe	
↓ LL1,04 (Order 4)	2			
₩ LL1,05 (Order 5)				
₩ LL1,06 (Order 6)				
₩ LL1,07 (Order 7)				
Storage1,01				
Storage1,02				
Storage1,03				
Storage1,04				
Storage1,05				
Storage1,06				
Storage1,07				
Storage1,08				
Degassing,01				
O MBE1,01				
O MBE1,02				
Buffer1,01				
			Ok	Cancel

#### Error examples:

two platens start at the same position in the cassette. No path defined with platen xxx.

## **Editor tabs**

#### **Description tab**

Click on the *Description* tab to edit the general information of the batch such as the title, Author, Company and comments.

Descriptio	n Editor Options Batch process options		
Creation	29/07/2024 14:24:38	Comments	
Title			
Author			
Company			D

Editor options These options restrict the use of the editor in order to limit typing errors.

Description Editor Options Batch process options

- Allow to start a path anywhere (even a process chamber)
- Allow to terminate a path anywhere
- Allow multiple paths to start at the same position
- Allow multiple paths to terminate at the same position

## Batch process options:



By default, when no box is checked, Crystal XE optimizes the paths so that the occupancy rate of the chambers is at the maximum. Thus, several platens can be treated at the same time if the capacity of the system allows it.

#### "Take a platen in the load..."



Among the platens selected in the batch, Crystal will initiate the start of a platen in the order defined by the "Order" option.

However, two choices are possible:

#### 1) As soon as the destination is free.

In this case, the platen will only be removed from the first stage if the destination position is free. Otherwise, Crystal will perform the same check with the next platen in the defined order, and will only take the platen if the destination is free.

#### Example:

Platen number 1 in Load at position 1 must go to the degas chamber (order 2) Platen number 2 in Load at position 2 must go to the growth chamber (order 1) Platen number 3 in Load at position 3 must go to the storage chamber (order 3)

Crystal with begin to process by the order 1 (in this example it is the platen number 2). If the growth chamber is not free, then Crystal will process with the platen corresponding to the order 2 (platen number 1). As the destination of the this platen is the degas chamber, and if the degas chamber is free, then the platen number 1 will be moved to the degas chamber even if the platen number 2 stays in the load. The platen number 2 will be moved later when the growth chamber will be free.

The same reasoning will be applied to platen order 3 (platen number 3).

## 2) When the previous platen has been picked up from the loading lock.

In this case, the order will be scrupulously respected.

Using the previous example, Crystal will only move the platen corresponding to order 1 (platen number 2) when the degas chamber is free. Otherwise, no movement will take place. And each platen will only be moved if the one in the previous order has left its starting position.

#### "Limit the number of platens processed at the same time"

You can define a maximum number of platens to be processed at the same time by checking the following box and selecting the desired number as follows:

Description Editor Options Batch process options			
Take a platen in the load As soon as the destination is free O When the previous platen has been	n picked up from the loadind lock.		
Limit the number of platens processed at the same time to 2 🗘 Wait for a platen to be present at the starting position (do not stop the batch if it is free)			
Use a free position in a no process chamber (load,unload, etc) for swaping	Wait for the destination to become free (do not stop the batch if it is occupied).		

"Use a free position in a no process chamber (load, unload, etc..) for swapping"

If two platens need to be dropped to the same chamber, you might need swapping the platens.

Check the following box to allow the cluster to swap platens to an auxiliary storage when needed:



#### "Wait for a platen to be present at the starting position (do not stop the batch if it is free)"



This option is interesting in the case of continuous production. The starting position **must be different** from the arrival position but can be in the same loading / unloading chamber.

#### "Wait for the destination to become free (do not stop the batch if it is occupied)



Like the previous option, this option is interesting in the case of continuous production. The starting position **must be different** from the arrival position but can be in the same loading / unloading chamber. When checked, if the user has not had time to remove the previous stage

which was in the same position, the batch will not stop. In this case, the platen will wait in the previous position but the other tasks will continue in order to optimize the occupancy of the chambers..

## **Editor options**

These options restrict the use of the editor in order to limit typing errors.

#### "Allow to start a path anywhere (even a process chamber)" "Allow to terminate a path anywhere"

By default, a platen may not start or terminate its path in a growth chamber.

Check either one or both the following boxes to allow the platens to start or/and terminate their path in any of the chambers:



#### "Allow multiple path to start at the same position"

#### "Allow multiple path to terminate at the same position"

These option disable the error "x platens use the same starting position" and "x platens use the same destination position"



## 14.2. Editing batch using the script editor

To begin a new script, click on the new button and select script.

The script editor will open:

X		•••
File Edit	Search Tools Help	
2	Dia 😥 🛃 🙏 🎇 🖬 🔞 📴 Parameters: 🔤 🧱	
Cluster 1		
1 - 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	<pre>Begin     // Example     // Example     // MovePlaten('Loading',5, 'Degas',1,true); // ==&gt; Nove the platen from Loading at pos 5 to Degas at pos 1 and wait for the end of the move     // RunRecipe('Degas','degas.rcp',0,true); // ==&gt; Run recipe "degas.rcp" with option=0 and wait the end of recipe     // you can also use: repeat until Degas.Recipe.Status=R5_STOP; // ==&gt; Wait for the recipe end     // showNessage('Platen is in the degas chamber and recipe is completed'); End; </pre>	
	Insert	
- 10 -	Ck Cancel	

You can use all language functions.

To move a tray from a script, use the MovePlaten function.

Refer to the example given in the script editor (in comment) and to the online help when pressing the F1 key (or by the help menu)

Example of script in a system with two clusters:



## 14.3. Executing a batch

If no batch file is loaded, click on the file icon *integration* to select and open the desired batch file. Once opened, the file appears in the field on a green background. In case of error the background is displayed in red and in this case, it is not possible to launch the batch.



A green background indicates that the batch is loaded and has no error.

In case of error the background color is red:



A red background indicates that the batch is loaded and has error.

The error message is indicated in red and bold.

#### **Execution mode**

Three execution mode are possible:

🚹 💕 🚯	🥖 🔄 🗙 彦 Edit a batch
test_3platens.ba	itch
💽 Start	Continue 🖸 Stop 🕕 Pause
Run once Run once Infinite batch Infinite path	Batch Id: 165 ecuted only once

- Run once will execute the batch only once.
- **Infinite batch**: when all the platens will be completed, the batch will restart automatically.
- **Infinite path**: when a platen is finished, it automatically restart while other platens continue to run.

Click on the Start button



to start the batch.

The following window is displayed:

Batch Id 166	START NOW !
Will start in: 23 hour 59 r	nin 54 sec
Date 30/07/2024 [	Start time preselection
Time 15:45:41	▲ ▼
	Cancel

- "Start now" will start the batch immediately.
- "**Start time preselection**": This second option delays the batch launch to a desired date and time.

Press Start time preselection and the display will be the following:



## Execution

During the execution of a batch, an animation allows to follow the evolution of the positions of the platens:



You can supervise the execution of the recipe using the Recipe inspector window. On a process chamber column, click on desired platen and then click on the flask icon to open the Recipe inspector in a pop-up window.

LL1	Storage1	Degassing	MBE1 🔲 Buffer1
[8] 8	8	1	2 1
[7] 7	7		Recipe [8] 1
[6] 6	6		
Completed [5] 5	5		
Completed [4] 4	4		
3	3		
[2] 2	2		
[1] 1 TESTEUR	1		

A click on the stop button will display the following dialog box.

Warning		8
	Do you want to stop only the recipe or the recipe and also the batch ?	
	Recipe Recipe & Batch Cancel	

At this point, you can either stop the recipe only or stop the recipe and the batch.

A click on this icon  $\blacksquare$  will open the recipe inspector:



The **Batch log** box displays history of the batch events.

Batches related events are saved automatically as '.txt' files to the *Log folder*, in your project directory.

To open your project directory, click on the file menu and select Browse project directory.

## Moving history

Detach Clear	🚺 Plate	ns E	xport	Column	width 50
Step	1	2	3	4	5
Date	24/07/29	24/07/29	24/07/29	24/07/29	24/07/29
Time	15:59:45	16:00:11	16:00:15	16:00:41	16:00:45
Relative time	00:00:00	00:00:26	00:00:30	00:00:56	00:01:00
Duration		00:00:26	00:00:03	00:00:26	00:00:03
LL1	<b>§</b> 5	<mark>↑ ⑤</mark> °	4	1	8 3
Storage1					
Degassing	• (5)	5	* ④	•	* 🛞
MBE1				* 🚯 1	
Buffer1					
Move time	4 sec	3 sec	3 sec	3 sec	3 sec
Recipe	degas.rcp		degas.rcp	test.rcp	degas.rcp
Platen ID					

This part of the window graphically displays the paths taken by the different platens.

In the tool bar, the column width can be changed.

Click on the Info button **Platens** to open the Platens information pop-up window.

REF Platens information	
Platen 1 Platen 2 Platen 3 Platen 4	17/07/2019 17:45:50 : Loading (1) 17/07/2019 17:45:56 : Degas_chamber 17/07/2019 17:46:12 : C21DZ (1)
	Close

For each selected platen, the *Platens information* windows gives you the date and exact time the platen was dropped into a chamber and allow you to control whether the path was correctly executed.

# **14.4.** Modify paths individually at anytime

When the batch is running or stopped, you can edit the path followed by each platen.

To edit a platen, click on it and the following dialog box will open:

LL1	Sto	orage1	De	egassing	MBE1		Buffer1
[8] 8			8		1 -	- 2	1
[7] 7			7			- 1	
[6] 6			6				
Completed [5]	Plate	natil15	E)				8
Completed [4		Enable	ed for a	automatic mod	e		Ť
Completed [8							
[2]		Order	1	<b>~</b>			
11	Plat	ten number	5				
TESTEUR		Platen ID					
	۵	escription					
	Step	s					
	#	Chamber	Positi	ion Recipe		Post rec	ipe
	1	LL1	5				
	2	Degassing	1	Degassing	\degas.rcp	11	
	3>>	LL1	5				
Batch status: BS_S							

You can modify the Platen ID, the description, the path and also the starting point.

The starting point is displayed with these two characters ">>". You can change the starting point by double clicking on a cell of the fist culumn "#"



It is also possible to add a new step to the path by click on the next free cell in the Chamber column :

Plate	en at LL1,5			8
	Enable	ed for auto	omatic mode	
	Order	1	-	
Pla	ten number	5		
	Platen ID			
[	Description			
Step	5			
#	Chamber	Position	Recipe	Post recipe
1	LL1	5		
2	Degassing	1	Degassing\degas.rcp	
3>>	>LL1	5		
	~			
	LL1 Storage1 Degassing MBE1 Buffer1		20 20 20 20	24/07/29 16:03 24/07/29 16:03 24/07/29 16:03 24/07/29 16:03

When you have finished modifying all the platens, press the "continue" button continue the batch from the current position.

# .

# **14.5. Moving a platen for a simple movement**

There are two ways to move a tray from one position to another.

By clicking on the button "Single move" or by using "drag and drop".

1) Single move

When the batch is stopped, click on the button "Single move":

🔹 Single move		D
📑 💕 🗗	🧪 🚍 💥 📂 Edit a batch	12.00
test_3platens.b	atch	
Start	Continue 🖸 Stop 🕕 Pause	

This will display the following information:

Continue

to

🕂 Batch mode			
From		Destination	
Chamber LL 1	Position	Chamber Storage1	Position
		Move	Stop

Select the start chamber/position and the destination chamber/position and press on the Move button to start the movement.

2) Drag and drop

You can drag and drop a platen from the automation tab view or from a user view like the main user view.

LL1	Storage1	Degassing	MBE1	Buffer1
[8] 8	8	1	2	1
[7] 7	7		1	
[6] 6	6			
Completed [5] 5	5			
Completed [4] 4	Crystal X	E		×
Completed [8]3	Move	platen Number 5 fro	om LL1,05 to Storag	e1,01 ?
[2] 2		Yes	<u>N</u> o	
[1] 1 TESTEUR				

Example from the automation tab view:

Example from the main user view



# 15. Direct connect

## 15.1. Introduction

The direct connect is an option in Crystal XE that can be enabled in the setup/options window. Crystal XE acts as a server (it responds to requests sent by other software.).

The other software requesting the data can be a specially developed program or the Riber soft mobile client application (available for download for Android and Windows from <u>http://www.crystalXE.com</u>).

To enable the direct connect feature, go in setup/options and enable the Servers / Direct connect:

Toptions				000
General → Appearance → Startup → Chambers → Email → SMS → Could/Mobile → Data logger → Servers (1) → Modbus servers → ASCII servers → Direct connect ↓ UDP server → Advanced	DC Server enabled The direct connect feature allows you to easily connect a tablet or cell phone to Crystal XE via the local network. The ID used during the connection is used as a config file. Password Password local by clients TCP Port 80			
	Connected clients Clear Log disabled	Session ID Connection date/time Connection duration	Config files archive	
د >				Ok Cancel

Note the **server URL** and the **password** displayed on this page. This information must be used by the application connecting to Crystal XE.

To operate, the application must be connected to the <u>same network as Crystal XE</u>. As the connection is direct, there's no need for an Internet connection, as information passes directly between the client and the server.

So if you're using a tablet or phone, they need to be connected to Crystal XE using a **Wifi link**.

## **15.2.** Example with the RIBER soft client application

The application is available for Android and Windows.

- The Android version is available on the Google Play Store by searching for "crystalxe"




CrystalXE mobile - RIBER Riber

 The windows application is available for download at <u>https://www.crystalxe.com/mycrystalxe/download/</u>

**Note:** You need to log in to your account to download the application - if you don't have an account, you can create one for free - then go to My CrystalXE and the "Download" page.



Run the application (on android or windows) and enter the following information:

Mobile Crystal	XE	×	- 🗆	×
Mobile CrystalXE v2.10b01			RIBE	R SOFT
	Acco	ount		
lf you dor	n't have an accoun	t, go at www.cr	ystalxe.com	
Email	John_PC			
Password	•••••			
Server	Custom	_		~
	http://10.95.14	1.63:80	_	
				業
	Log	in		

In that case,

- The **email** field is an identiant (string of characters without "@", not an email address) that will be displayed in Crystal XE to identify the client.
- The **Password** must be the same as the one defined in the options in Crystal XE.
- The server must be "Custom"
- And you must specify the **Crystal address** (this is the ip address of the Crystal XE computer with the indication of the port 80)

Click on Login to establish the connexion.



You are now ready to create your own screens directly on the application.

Screens are stored on the remote Crystal XE computer.

So when you reconnect with the same email, you'll get all the screens back. This means you can use different hardware (phone, tablet, other computer..) to display the same screens.

In the options of CrystalXE, you can see the client indicated in the connected client list:



## 15.3. Protocol

If you want to develop your own application, then you need to follow these guidelines. In these examples, <CR> is the carriage return character (ASCII code 13 in decimal) and <LF> is the line feed character (ASCII code 10 in decimal)

The application must follow the following steps in the order indicated (except for optional steps) The client will be disconnected after 10 seconds of inactivity. In this case, the entire sequence must be repeated.

#### 1) Login transaction (example with password = riber)

The client must send the following string of characters:

```
action=login<CR><LF>email=John<CR><LF>password=F4E4EBF7E4E5EDE9E9E5F5E
EEEF6E0E5EBEEE7F6E3EBF4E6EA948F848394E5ECEBEEECEDF7EFE5EAE4E1E2E2E7E9F
5E9E4E3<CR><LF>
```

#### Example of answer:

```
OK:Array
(
    [id] => NAbCsFcbQmskS3r
    [name] => CrystalXE
    [company] => Riber
    [email] => John
    [password] => ?
```

```
[datetime] => 2024-07-31 17:17:22
[dernieracces] => 2024-07-31 17:17:22
[cnt] => 263
[addr_ip] => xxx.xxx.xxx
[NL] => 1
[AU] => 1
[level] => 1
```

(Each line terminates by **<CR><LF>**)

## 2) Request system list

)

action=get\_system\_list<CR><LF>

## Example of answer:

```
OK:id=1,systemname=local_system,versionXE=3.20 build
5,datetime=2024-08-01 08:48:00,lastaccess=2024-08-01
08:48:00#&#<LF>
```

## 3) Request structure

action=get structure<CR><LF>id system=1<CR><LF>

## Example of answer:

```
OK:id_tag=0,kind=0,vartype=8,rw=3,handle=0,level1=Load1,level2=P
ressure,level3=Load1,level4=MV,comment=Rescaled Measured
Value,value=0#&#id_tag=1,kind=2,vartype=6,rw=3,handle=0,level1=L
oad1,level2=Pressure,level3=Load1,level4=AllAgentDisabled,commen
t=,value=1#&#id_tag=2,kind=2,vartype=6,rw=3,handle=0,level1=Load
1,level2=Pressure,level3=Load1,level4=RegConnected,comment=,valu
e=1#&#id_tag=3,kind=2,vartype=6,rw=3,handle=0,level1=Load1,level
2=Pressure,level3=Load1,level4=SubChannelNbr,comment=,value=1#&#id_tag=4,kind=2, (...) <LF>
```

## 4) Optional: Request configuration (screens)

action=get config<CR><LF>id system=1**<CR><LF>** 

<u>Answer</u>: a zip file that contain the screens (format not specified, only for Crystal XE clients)

## 5) Optional: Request configuration file (config.xfg file)

action=get configXFG**<CR><LF>** 

Answer: the config.xfg file

6) Optional: Request the history log

action=get history log<CR><LF>id system=1<CR><LF>

#### Answer:

```
OK:id=41,message=$D939|2:2024/08/01 09:22:22: (541) This version
is up to date (the latest released version is
3.20build5)#&#id=40,message=$2D28|1:2024/08/01 09:22:21: (002)
[splash] 11.438: Ready#&#id=39,message=$5F9D|1:2024/08/01
09:22:21: (002) [splash] 11.422: Checking
keys#&#id=38,message=$FDC3|1:2024/08/01 09:22:21: (002) [splash]
11.422: Initialization is
complete#&#id=37,message=$CE8C|1:2024/08/01 09:22:21: (002)
[splash] 11.406: Starting
services#&#id=36,message=$E7ED|1:2024/08/01 09:22:21: (002) (...)
```

## 7) Request tags values

action=get values<cr><lf>id system=1<cr><lf>

#### <u>Answer:</u>

```
OK:lastaccess=2024-08-01

09:28:00#&#id_tag=0,value=0,datetime=2024-08-01

09:28:00#&#id_tag=1,value=1,datetime=2024-08-01

09:28:00#&#id_tag=2,value=1,datetime=2024-08-01

09:28:00#&#id_tag=3,value=1,datetime=2024-08-01

09:28:00#&#id_tag=5,value=1,datetime=2024-08-01

09:28:00#&#id_tag=6,value=1,datetime=2024-08-01

(...)
```

# 16. DATA LOGGER

## 16.1. Introduction

Crystal XE can send most of data to an external data logger.

The data logger is an option in Crystal XE that can be enabled or not. This feature runs in the background and is invisible to the user.

## 16.2. Parameters

This feature can be defined in the options window and the item "Data logger".

Dptions		•••
General → Startup → Chambers → Email → SMS → Cloud/Mobile → Data logger → Servers → Modhus servers	When this option is activated, the selected data is sent periodically to an external database using the HTTP / POST protocol. Changing the switch position starts or stops sending immediately Data logger is disabled  Open data logger analyser at startup Log event Critical even	
ASCII servers		
	2 tags ♥ Update times When recipe running When idle Send all tags every 3000 ♥ ms 15000 ♥ ms 30 sec ♥	
	Ok	Cancel

The main point here is the update period.

There are three update periods:

- A fast acquisition period which is activated as soon as a recipe is running.
- A slower acquisition period which is used when the system is in standby
- A period to define when all labels are to be sent.

## Optimization:

In the first two cases, after each period (When recipe running or When Idle), a data packet is sent to the data logger.

In order to limit the size of the data in the data logger, only the data that has changed is sent.

When the third period expires, all data is sent to the data logger even if it has not changed.

## **16.3.** Data sent to the data logger

Example of data sent to the data logger:

- For each chambers
  - The properties of the equipment and the properties of the sub-equipment which are defined in the default recorder
  - The status of the recipe
  - The current layer number.

For example, for a temperature controller that is used for an effusion cell, the following data is sent (12 data): MV, Offset, TSP, regTSP, CSP, MaxTSP, MaxOP,TOP,OP, Tunemode, TampSP, RampOP.

- Properties of the Batch
- Properties of App (CPU\_Usage, ErrStatus ..)
- All global variables

## 16.4. Protocol

Crystal XE uses the protocol HTTP over TCP/IP.

It uses the POST method.

The protocol is the same as that specified for sending data to the cloud.

## 16.5. Data flow structure

The chronological stages of the exchanges between crystal XE and the server are described below:

## 1) HTTP\_CONNECT

This is the first step of the process to login to the data base. This step will create a session in the webserver.

Parameters list are:

- action=login
- email =<user identifier>
- password=<user password>
- systemname=<user define system name>

## 2) **HTTP\_CHECK\_LICENSE**

After sending the connection information, the server will respond with "OK:" followed by a long character string containing useful data.

To avoid a conflict, this step will check if another computer is using the same system name with the same user name. If so, Crystal XE will ask the user if they wish to continue.

Example of string returned by the server (#\$A is a line feed character)

'OK:a\_mycrystalxe=Array'#\$A'('#\$A' [id] => 1'#\$A' [id\_user] => 94'#\$A' [systemname] => test'#\$A' [versionXE] => 2.03 build 9'#\$A' [license] => 048E30572345511D'#\$A' [datetime] => 2020-01-02 10:50:49'#\$A' [client\_cnt] => 0'#\$A' [server\_cnt] => 24'#\$A' [client\_ip] => '#\$A' [server\_ip] => 192.168.1.184'#\$A' [lastaccess] => 2020-01-06 09:29:15'#\$A' [lastaccessclient] => 0000-00-00 00:00:00'#\$A' [client\_send] => '#\$A' [AB] => 0'#\$A')'A

## 3) HTTP\_UPDATE\_LICENSE

Crystal XE sends its license number to the server. This information will be saved in the data base.

Parameters of the post are:

- action=update\_license
- license=<current registered license number>

## 4) HTTP\_SEND\_TAGS\_DEFINITION

Send the tags name to the server.

- Parameters of the post are:
- action=tags\_def
- tag\_names=<frame>

Example of frame: 0=Chamber1.BakeOut1.temperature.MV;1=Chamber1.BakeOut1.temperature.Offset;

## 5) **HTTP\_REFRESH\_DATA**

When all the previous steps are successfully completed, the process will remain at that step until no communication errors occur.

#### Refresh tags values:

Every n seconds (n=3 seconds by default), Crystal XE will send only the data that has changed to the server.

Parameters of the post are:

- action=Mupdate\_values

- frame=<frame>

Example of frame:

0=750.233337402344`8=5`20=750.166625976563`28=7`57=0`77=0.133333340287209` 85=7`(...)

#### Send the history log:

When new data is recorded in the log, it is sent to the data logger.

Parameters of the post are:

- action= send\_historylog

- logs=<log content separated by '#&#'>

# 16.6. Example of data exchanged with a server

In the following example, we use the http server tool integrated into Crystal XE in the "Debug/Test tools/Http server" menu.

The tool's behavior is straightforward, as it systematically responds "OK" to every http request.

TTP server	000
This server is used to simulate a data logger server, to help you to dev	velop your own server.
Activate the server Turn on the http server at port 80	On
Clear Log is On	
2023/10/04 17:05:05.022 Connected 2023/10/04 17:05:05.042 CommandGet received with Parameters list: action=login,em 2023/10/04 17:05:05:050 Connected 2023/10/04 17:05:30.076 CommandGet received with Parameters list: action=update_ 2023/10/04 17:05:30.076 CommandGet received with Parameters list: action=update_	nail=test,password=tttt,systemname=test,versionXE=3.10 build 9,AB=0,hash ()
2023/10/04 17:05:30.255 Connected 2023/10/04 17:05:30.277 CommanGet received with Parameters list: action=tags_de 2023/10/04 17:05:30.689 Tx=OK 2023/10/04 17:05:30.689 Connected	ef,tag_names=0=Growth.Manipulator.central_Tch1.MV;1=Growth.Manipulator.ce ()
2023/10/04 17:05:30.710 CommandGet received with Parameters list: action=Mupdate 2023/10/04 17:05:30.713 Tx=OK 2023/10/04 17:06:00.685 Connected	e_values,partial_update=0,frame=0=0`1=0`2=0`3=0`4=0`5=0`6=0`7=0`8=0`9=0`1()
2023/10/04 17:06:00.703 CommandGet received with Parameters list: action=Mupdate 2023/10/04 17:06:00.708 Tx=OK 2023/10/04 17:06:10 Commented	e_values,partial_update=0,frame=0=0`1=0`2=0`3=0`4=0`5=0`6=0`7=0`8=0`9=0`1()
2023/10/04 17:06:19:311 Commerced 2023/10/04 17:06:19:332 CommandGet received with Parameters list: action=Mupdate 2023/10/04 17:06:19:337 Tx=OK	e_values,partial_update=1,frame=0=0`1=0`2=0`3=0`4=0`5=0`6=0`7=0`8=0`9=0`1()
2023/10/04 17:06:28.477 Connected 2023/10/04 17:06:28.477 Connected 2023/10/04 17:06:28.496 CommandGet received with Parameters list: action=Mupdate 2023/10/04 17:06:28.500 Tx=OK	e_values,partial_update=1,frame=12=25`
2023/10/04 17:06:30.712 Connected 2023/10/04 17:06:30.728 CommandGet received with Parameters list: action=Mupdate 2023/10/04 17:06:30.733 Tx=OK	e_values,partial_update=0,frame=0=0`1=0`2=0`3=0`4=0`5=0`6=0`7=0`8=0`9=0`1()
	Close

- In the first step, we can see the action=login with other parameters like email, password,systemname... etc
- In the second step, the Crystal XE license key is sent to the data logger to identify the single computer on which Crystal XE is licensed.
- In the third step, the tags names are sent following this format: tag\_names=<tagid\_0>=<tagname\_0>;<tagid\_1>=<tagname\_1>; etc...

In the following steps, Crystal XE sends either complete (partial\_update=0) or partial data updates (partial\_update=1).

# **17. DYNAMIC DATA EXCHANGE (DDE)**

## 17.1. Introduction

**Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE)** is a technology for interprocess communication used since the first versions of Microsoft Windows.

Thanks to the DDE protocol, it is possible to access all the data (properties) of Crystal XE but Crystal XE can also send data or execute actions to other compatible applications. Four script functions allow these exchanges:

- App.DDE.Check
- App.DDE.Poke
- App.DDE.Send
- App.DDE.Request

For more details on these functions, please refer to the DDE section in the script help or in the Crystal XE user manual.

This data exchange protocol can be used for report editing or for real-time calculations in Excel and interaction with Crystal XE.

MS Excel ©, MS Word © and LibreOffice are fully compatible with DDE. Other software like Matlab that could be useful are also compatible with this protocol.

#### Using DDE over the network

**Netdde.exe** is a Microsoft Windows Network Dynamic Data Exchange service. It is used to help exchange data over the network.

#### Remark:

If DDE does not work with MSWord, add the following key in the register: In HKEY\_CURRENT\_USER\Software\Microsoft\Office\16.0\Word\Security (check this path depending of the version you have), add a DWORD 32 bit and name it AllowDDE. Then change the value to 2.

#### Load Excel or Word or other application from a script

From a script in Crystal, to open an application in Windows, use either the function **WinExec** or **ShellExecute**.

Go to the script help from the script editor for more details on these functions.

Example of using WinExec: WinExec('C:\Program Files\Microsoft Office\root\Office16\excel.exe c:\temp\test.xlsx',1)

## 17.2. DDE Exchanges with EXCEL

#### About the decimal separator

By default, Excel uses the decimal separator **defined in Windows**: Control panel / Regional settings / Button Additional settings / Decimal symbol.

But you can also change the default decimal separator **in Excel**: Menu File / tab Options / tab Advanced / uncheck the box "Use system separator" and enter the new Decimal separator.

## 17.2.1. Display live data from Crystal XE: Hot DDE Link

Syntax: "=crystalxe|property!<property name>" (The ASCII code of the char | is 124)

**Example to display the error status of Crystal XE** In a cell enter the following text: **=***crystalxe*|*property*!*App.ErrStatus* This will display the main error status flag of Crystal XE (0 or 1)

**Other example to display the temperature value of a cell** =crystalxe|property!chamber1.EffusionCell1.tip temperaure.MV

The cell will be automatically updated. To browse all property of Crystal XE, in the main menu click on View/Data explorer

#### Remark about the decimal séparator:

Crystal will send values with the decimal separator that is defined in Windows (Control panel / Regional settings / Button Additional settings / Decimal symbol)

# 17.2.2. From Crystal XE request data to Excel (Using script / DDE\_Request)

In Crystal XE, uses the script function DDE\_Request
The syntax is:
DDE\_request('excel', [bookFileName\_with\_extension]SheetName, <CellRefere
nce>);

The cell reference depends on the country language used. With an English Excel the cell reference is  $\mathbf{RxCy}$  (x is the row number and y is the column number)

With a French excel, the cell reference is LxCy

```
Example:
Var
S: String;
Begin
S := App.DDE.request('excel','[Book1.xls]Sheet1','R1C1');
if length(S)>0 then ShowMessage(S);
End;
```

## 17.2.3. From Crystal XE send data to Excel (Using script / DDE\_Poke)

The syntax depends on the country language used in Excel. In Crystal XE, uses the script function App.DDE.Poke. The syntax is: App.DDE.poke('excel', [bookFileName\_with\_extension]SheetName,<CellRefer ence>,<data>);

The cell reference depends on the language used. With an English Excel the cell reference is **RxCy** (x is the row number and y is the column number)

With a French excel, the cell reference is **LxCy** 

```
Example:
Var
S: String;
n : integer;
Begin
n := random(1000);
S := App.DDE.poke('excel','[Book1.xls]Sheet1','R1C1',IntToStr(n));
if length(S)>0 then ShowMessage(S);
End;
```

## 17.2.4. From Crystal XE execute a method in Excel

Unlike Word, the following does not work with Excel -Print preview... -Save document as... But the following works:

#### -To create a new sheet

App.DDE\_Execute('excel','system','[NEW(1)]',true);

#### -To close the current sheet

```
App.DDE.Execute('excel', 'DDE_VB.xlsm','[File.Close()]',true);
(or 'system')

App.DDE.Execute('excel', 'DDE_VB.xlsm','[File.Close()]',true);
(or 'system')
```

#### -To run a macro

```
App.DDE.Execute('excel','DDE_VB.xlsm','[Run("Sheet1.MyMacrol")]',tru
e);
Or
App.DDE.Execute('excel','DDE_VB.xlsm','[Run("ThisWorkbook.MyMacrol")
]',true);
Or
App.DDE.Execute('winword','c:\temp\ddetes.docs','[Call MyMacro]',tru
e);
```

**Remark:** it is not possible to pass arguments to the macro. You must use a cell.

#### -Display an alerte message

```
App.DDE.Execute('excel', 'DDE_VB.xlsm', '[ALERT("Hello
world")]',true);
```

More methods

#### CELL SELECTION

```
-[Select("L1C1:L7C5")]
```

#### FONT CONTROL

```
-[Format.Font("Arial", 12, False, False, False, False, 0)]
(Parameters are: name of font (such as Arial, Courier, Times), height in points (72 points to
an inch), bold, italic, underline, strike, color)
```

```
-[error(false)]
-[Workbook.activate("Header Sheet")]
```

#### PAGE SETUP

```
landscape page setup with fit to page and center horizontally options specified
```

```
-[Page.Setup(" ","
```

```
", 0.75, 0.75, 1, 1, False, False, True, False, 2, 1, True, 1, 1, False)]';
(Parameters are: head, foot, left-, right-, top-, bottom- margins, heading, grid, horizontal center, vertical center, orientation, paper size, scale, page number, page order, cell color)
```

#### COLUMN WIDTHS

```
specify widths of the row label
[select("c1")]
[column.width(%trim(&rowlwid))]
```

#### OTHER MACRO

```
-[PRINT(1,,,,1,,,,,,2)]
-[file.close(false)]
```

-[QUIT()]'

## 17.2.5. From Excel write data to Crystal XE (Using macro / DDEPoke)

This is useful if you want to send the content of a cell to a property in Crystal XE. The property can be a single property or a list of strings like for Listbox, ComboBox or Memo

#### Example 1 with EXCEL change a single property

This example changes the temperature setpoint of the manipulator. The temperature setpoint value is supposed to be at the cell at row 2 and column 1

```
Sub Poke()
    DDEChannel = DDEInitiate("crystalxe", "property")
    Set MyRange = Cells(2, 1)
    DDEPoke DDEChannel, "C21DZ_Manipulator.Temperature.TSP", MyRange
    DDETerminate DDEChannel
End Sub
```

#### Example 2 with EXCEL change a list of strings

It is also possible to send a range of data into a listbox:

```
Sub Poke()
DDEChannel = DDEInitiate("crystalxe", "property")
Set MyRange = Range("A1:A3")
DDEPoke DDEChannel, "App.forms.MainUserView.Listbox1.Items", MyRange
DDETerminate DDEChannel
End Sub
```

For a comboBox, use also the property **items** of the comboBox. For a memo, use the property **lines**.

## 17.2.6. From Excel read data in Crystal XE (Using macro / DDERequest)

Example1: Request the temperature of the manipulator

```
Sub ReadTemperature()
   DDEChannel = DDEInitiate("crystalxe", "property")
   ReturnValue = DDERequest(DDEChannel,
"C21DZ.Manipulator.Temperature.MV")
   Cells(1, 1).Formula = ReturnValue
   DDETerminate DDEChannel
End Sub
```

#### Example2: Request a list of strings

(Each string of the list is separated by CR and LF)

In this example, we request all the items in Listbox1 which is in the main user view.

```
Sub ListBox()
DDEChannel = DDEInitiate("crystalxe", "property")
ReturnList = DDERequest(DDEChannel,
"App.forms.MainUserView.Listbox1.items")
```

```
Range("A1:A3") = ReturnList
DDETerminate DDEChannel
End Sub
```

## 17.3. DDE Exchanges with Word

To open Word and load a document, use WinExec

Example

```
WinExec('C:\Program Files\Microsoft Office\root\Office16\winword.exe
c:\temp\test.docx',1)
```

## 17.3.1. From Crystal XE send data to Word

In MSWORD, add a bookmark following this procedure:

- Enter a text
- Select this text and in the toolbar menu select Insert / bookmark

Home	Insert	Design	e what yo	u want to de	o (	ç
k Page	e Table	Pictures	Online Video	Hyperlink	Bookmark	Cross-
es	Tables		Media		Links	

Then give a name for this bookmark.

Example in video: <u>https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=C3p2FS0cK18</u>

In Crystal XE, uses the script function App.DDE.Poke.
The syntax is:
DDE poke('winword', <File name with extension>, <Bookmark name>, <data>);

For example (tested with MSword 365 version 2201), insert a button to the main user view and enter the following code:

```
Var
S: String;
n : integer;
Begin
n := random(1000);
S := App.DDE.poke('winword','test.docx','MyBookmark',IntToStr(n));
if length(S)>0 then ShowMessage(S);
End;
```

Create a word document named test.docx and insert a bookmark named MyBookmark. In Crystal XE, push on the button. The bookmark must change and a randomized value must be displayed.

## 17.3.2. From Crystal XE execute a method in Word

Print preview (The document must be already loaded)
App.DDE.Execute('winword','c:\temp\test.docx','[FILEPRINTPREVIEW]',fal
se);

#### Save document as...

App.DDE.Execute('winword','C:\temp\test.docs','[FileSaveAs.Name="NewNa
me.docx"]',false);

# 17.4. From Excel or Word, send data to Crystal XE (Using Macro / DDEExecute)

In Excel or Word, this is possible by writing a macro, so you must show the developer tab. The Developer tab isn't displayed by default, but you can add it to the ribbon.

1. On the File tab, go to Options > Customize Ribbon.

2. Under Customize the Ribbon and under Main Tabs, select the **Developer** check box.

You need to use the method App.DDE.Execute and to give as parameter the name of the function with eventually the appropriate parameters for this function preceded by "Run|"

```
The syntax is : DDEExecute DDEChannel, "<Propertyname> := <Constant Value
or String>"
```

#### Example1: Open and Close the shutter of Cell As

From the *Developer* tab, in the group *Controls*, click on the button *Insert* and select a button (from the control and not from the ActiveX). Draw the button on the sheet and enter the following macro:

```
Sub OpenAs_Click()
DDEChannel = DDEInitiate("crystalxe", "property")
DDEExecute DDEChannel, "C21DZ.As_VAC500_P1.Shutter.Control:=1"
DDETerminate DDEChannel
End Sub
Sub CloseAs_Click()
DDEChannel = DDEInitiate("crystalxe", "property")
DDEExecute DDEChannel, "C21DZ.As_VAC500_P1.Shutter.Control:=0"
DDETerminate DDEChannel
End Sub
```

It is also possible to execute several actions:

```
Sub OpenAs_Click()
DDEChannel = DDEInitiate("crystalxe", "property")
    DDEExecute DDEChannel, "C21DZ.As_VAC500_P1.Shutter.Control:=1"
    DDEExecute DDEChannel, "C21DZ.P_KPC250_P2.Shutter.Control:=1"
    DDETerminate DDEChannel
End Sub
```

#### Example2: Change the selected index of a combo Box

```
Add a comboBox in the main user view.
Add at least 3 items and execute this macro.
Sub SelectId1()
    DDEChannel = DDEInitiate("crystalxe", "property")
    DDEExecute DDEChannel,
"App.forms.MainUserView.Combol.ItemIndex:=1"
    DDETerminate DDEChannel
```

End Sub

The second index (begin at zero) will be selected.

## **17.5.** DDE Exchange with LibreOffice Calc

## 17.5.1. Display live data from Crystal XE (Hot DDE Link)

In Calc the syntax is =DDE("crystalxe";"property";"<Property name>")

Example to display the error status of Crystal XE In a cell enter the following text: **=DDE("crystalxe";"property";"App.ErrStatus")** This will display the main error status flag of Crystal XE (0 or 1)

Other example to display the temperature value of a cell: *=DDE("crystalxe";"property";"Chamber1.EffusionCell1.tip\_temperature.mv")* 

## 17.6. More information on DDE

https://www.angelfire.com/biz/rhaminisys/ddeapps.html#DDEExcelSpec

# **18. OBJECT LINKING AND EMBEDDING (OLE)**

**Object Linking & Embedding (OLE Automation)** is a proprietary technology developed by Microsoft that allows embedding and linking to documents and other objects. Crystal XE uses this protocol to exchange data and control Open office, Libre Office (Writer, Calc, Impress), Excel and Word.

Thanks to the OLE automation, Crystal XE can send data or execute actions to other compatible applications.

#### Script functions allow these exchanges:

- App.OLE.LoadDocument
- App.OLE.SaveDocument
- App.OLE.Close
- App.OLE.Poke
- App.OLE.Request
- App.OLE.ExportPDF
- App.OLE.RunMacro
- App.OLE.TableCreate
- App.OLE.TableAddRows
- App.OLE.TableSetCell
- App.OLE.ShowDocument

All these functions are used for example to generate automatic reports in the recipes. These reports can be PDF, XLS, DOC, ODT, etc...

For more details on these functions, please refer to the OLE functions in the script help or in the Crystal XE user manual.

# 19. FAQ

## 19.1. Display problem in charts

If you encounter any problems of display like in the following picture:



#### If you are under Windows XP:

- There is no alternative but to disable the display of information balloon.

#### If you are under Windows 7 or windows 8:

Turn on the aero mode:

Right click on the desktop background and then click on the item "Personalize". Select aero Theme.

If the problem persists, enable the DWM (Desktop Window Manager) Click on Start and type "services.msc" in the search field and press enter. In the "Services" window, look for the entry "Desktop Window Manager Session Manager" Double click and set the "Startup type" as "Enabled" and click on Start

## **19.2.** Using of National Instruments cards

One of the solutions for using cards from National Instruments is to use a modbus gateway developed in Labview.

The virtual instrument file which is given in the example below is available on request.

Sateway.vi -	×
File Edit View Project Operate Tools Window Help	
······································	 ? 1
MODBUS GATEWAY	î
TCP port       One input port named: DI_P0         502       One output port named: DO_P0         Voltage analog input (8 channels, 1 sample on demand) named: AI_P0         Voltage analog output (2 channels, 1 sample on demand) named: AO_P0         TCP Port can be change into the file gateway.ini: [Setup] Port=502         Digital input port 0 (DI_P0)       Digital output port 0 (DO_P0)	
Analog inputs 19993 21599 22706 24249 25321 26383 27357 28579	
Analog outputs	
<	>



## 19.2.1. Installation procedure

1) Create the executable file

	New Projec 장 🔵 II	15pt Applic	Measurement & Automation Explorer Instrumentation	•		
	You must	BUS G	Profile Security User Name	•		
TCP port	- One out - Voltage - Voltage TCP Port o	put port name analog input i analog outpur can be change	Build Application (EXE) from VI LLB Manager Import Shared Variable Distributed System Manager	, ,		
Di	gital input p	ort 0 (DI_P0)	Find VIs on Disk Prepare Example VIs for NI Example Finder Remote Panel Connection Manager			
Anal	og inputs		Control and Simulation	•		
0	0	0	Create Data Link Find LabVIEW Add-ons			
Analo	og outputs		VI Package Manager		-	
0	0		Advanced Options	•		

- 2) Copy all files needed for the gateway (executable files and INI files) in a folder of the computer, by example, in the folder c:\Riber\Gateways
- 3) Download and Install NI DAQMx (today in 2020, version 19.5) Link: <u>https://www.ni.com/fr-fr/support/downloads/drivers/download.ni-dagmx.html#325032</u>
- 4) Download and Install the Labview Runtime Link:<u>https://www.ni.com/fr-fr/support/downloads/software-products/download.labview.html#329458</u>
- 5) Run the executable files of the gateway
- 6) Run Crystal XE
- 7) In Crystal XE, create a Modbus client that will communicate with the gateway, either in localhost or on a remote computer.

## 19.3. Using Crystal with Arduino

See the Application note AN005 available on http://www.crystalxe.com/faq



# 20. ANNEXE A - Write a recipe by example

The following example details how to create a new recipe based on the demo C21 DZ project.

This recipe is intended to grow a simple conventional HEMT structure As-based on a C21 DZ using RIBER cells mounted onto the system. Namely a VAC 500 for As, an ABI85 for Ga, a ABN60DF for Al and a ABN 135 DC8 for Si. Manipulator is the standard 4" oven allowing to grow on up to 3" diameter wafers.

It is just an example to show the main features of the recipe editor, set-point temperature values and valve positions varying from system to system. Indeed end-user own procedure may differ.

For demonstration purpose this chapter has been splitted into several parts:

Section 8.1.1: We create a first recipe, intended to be a sub-recipe named *deoxidation GaAs* in the final *HEMT* recipe. It will be used to remove oxide from the GaAs wafer prior to growth. Thus it only concerns manipulator and As cell parameter management.

Section 8.1.2: More information about main recipe editor features, based on the recipe edited in part 1.1.

Section 8.2.1: The final recipe will include at first step the execution of the sub-recipe prepared above, that is oxide removal prior to growth. Then we will create layers that will be directly included in the final recipe, corresponding in fact to the buffer growth. For demonstration purpose, this series of layers will include a 'loop', corresponding to the growth of a super-lattice GaAs/AlGaAs prior to active layer growth.

Section 8.2.2: More in-depth information about loop usage.

Section 8.3.1: after the series of layers created to describe the buffer growth, we will create two more sub-recipes. Namely, the *HEMT active layers* and the *end GaAs growth* sub-recipes. They will be edited in a very similar way to the *deoxidation GaAs* sub-recipe so no further detailed information here.

Section 8.3.2: More in-depth information based on final recipe edited in part 3.1, such as simple script usage, use of pause and offset function.

Now recipe is fully edited. In Section 8.4 one can find the other two presentations of the recipe: in form of a table, the recipe overview, and in form of graphs for the various parameters such as temperatures and valve positions.

Section 8.5 briefly describes some specific features that can be useful, during or after recipe execution.

1.1	1 Operating basics Remove oxide from the wafer		Remove oxide from the wafer
	1.2       More information about recipe edition         Layer information       Background color         More about ramping       Insert, copy/paste layers         Sub-recipe       Ramp duration smaller than layer duration         Recipe start at a specified layer number       Use of non-linear ramps         Where is my recipe window?       Where is my recipe window?		n Iration Iber
2.1		Loop edition	Buffer growth
	2.2	In-depth information about loop usage Nested loops 'Slow' ramp Shutter initialization at loop start Case study: super-lattice InAs/GaSt	ge
3.1		Recipe edition: finalization	Active layer growth Growth stop
	3.2	In-depth information about recipe e Pause function How to mix script and recipe Configurable recipes Offset editor Growth rate editor	edition
	4	Recipe edition: additional viewings Graph display Table view	3
5 Other features: How to follow recipe execution progress? How to retrieve data from recorded files		ogress? d files	

# 20.1. Operating basics

- First create a new recipe:



- Right-click on the 'Main recipe' line left side and create a first layer by selecting 'Add\Layer':

Main recipe: Nona	me Incert		
G	Add		Layer _
×	Remove	0	Loop
	Remove all	00	Pause
	Сору	<b>1</b>	Sub Recipe
	Paste		
	BackGround color	•	
23	Start recipe here		

- An empty layer is added to the recipe tree left side of the recipe editor:

Main recipe: Noname	
	+• 😫
	standar in

A 'layer' in Crystal terminology is a recipe line within which, when executed, various parameters such as temperature set-points, shutter positions, valve positions, ... will be modified. As explained below, some parameters will be modified immediately, some others as a ramp generally based on the layer duration. A parameter modification is called an 'event'.

This first layer will be used to start heating the manipulator on which the platen equipped with the GaAs wafer has been transferred. Typically transfers are performed with no power applied to the manipulator filament, and a temperature reading below 300°C. Thus as a first step the manipulator set-point is increased here to 400°C (with no As incoming flux yet), and a low speed rotation, here 4 rpm, set (to check from time to time RHEED pattern appearance in all directions).

The manipulator temperature could be increased as a step, or linearly. If linear is chosen, as in this example, a new set-point will be sent to the corresponding temperature controller channel according to the set resolution, in this case every 1 sec. Indeed in most cases temperature set-points are modified as ramps for a better control.

Note that the ramping rate will be automatically calculated from the layer duration, based on the starting and ending temperature set-points.

If there is no starting temperature, such as in this case since this is the very first layer of the recipe, the starting temperature will be the current set-point applied.

Ramping rate calculation is straightforward : for example if the starting set-point is 250°C (the set-point taken from the previous layer) and the ending set-point 400°C (the one which is set as a new event), with a layer duration set to 6 min, the calculated ramping rate will 25°C per min.



Events can be edited one by one or simultaneously. In the second case, already edited events appear in red color in the event tree window (such as RampSP above).

The rotation speed of the manipulator is entirely controlled by the RIBER ACM controller (acceleration, deceleration), no ramping ramp can be used for this parameter.

Typically before transfering the platen into the growth chamber, the temperature is set to 250°C, to make sure as explained above that real temperature is low enough and no power is applied to the filament.

- So setting a duration of 6 min, 00:06:00:000, will correspond to a ramp rate of 25°C/min to reach 400°C after 6 min.

Main recipe: Noname	$\frown$	Properties Script
🔄 🕕 01-00:00:00.000- Start heating GaAs wafer- Layer dura	ion = 6 m 🕹 😹	
Manipulator	me)	Layer duration 00:06:00.000
Rotation_basic.Rotation_SP = 4		User information Start heating GaAs wafer

Next the temperature of the manipulator will be slowly further increased under As flux. At some point deoxidation will be observed by eyes, but the temperature will be increased slightly higher, to make sure deoxidation is fully completed, and the wafer degased at a temperature high enough to remove contaminants such as C. So both main shutter and As cell shutter will be opened at the beginning of the second layer. In order not to spill too much As, the valve will be slowly opened as the temperature increased. Also for a better control the ramping rate will be decreased at an intermediary temperature, so two layers will be used for this step.

- Create a second layer, either by selecting again the very first line of the recipe tree and right-clicking, or selecting the first line and clicking on the small dedicated icon:



- In this second layer the manipulator temperature is increased (400°C) to 550°C in 6 min (00:06:00.000), so still at 25°C/min ramping rate, and the As valve linearly increased from its starting position (most likely 0%) to 24% in 6 min as well (so at a ramping rate of 4%/min). Both As cell and main shutter are opened.

There is no further event for the manipulator rotation speed, so the previous setting, 4 rpm, will be kept on until a new event is declared.

There is no event for both the cracker and the reservoir temperatures of the As cell, so the current setpoints will be kept, until a new event, if any, is declared.

Note that if no event is defined for a given equipment, when running a recipe, the corrresponding tag will be kept at its last known value from its controller.

Main recipe: Noname	Properties Script
±–4 Manipulator	Layer duration 00:06:00.000
E- 02-00:06:00.000- increase T° under As flux at 25°C/min-Layer duration = 6 m	
E-49 Manipulator	User information increase T° under As flux at 25°C/min
Temperature.RampSP = 550 (linear while layer time)	
121 Main_shutter.Control = OPEN	Background color
E-4 As_P1_VAC500	Colorit events to add to this laver
- 121 Shutter.Control = OPEN	
Valve_AVP6504.RampOP = 24 (linear while layer time)	E-S C21DZ

A shutter position modification, open <=> closed, is immediately set at the start of the layer, independently of the layer duration.

- Create a third layer. In this third layer the manipulator temperature will be increased from 550°C to 680°C in 13 min (00:13:00.000), so at a ramping rate of 10°C/min. Meanwhile the As valve will be linearly increased to 76% (so still at a ramping rate of 4%/min).

There is no further event for As cell shutter and main shutter, so both are kept open until a new event is declared.

Main recipe: Noname	Properties Script
⊕ 01-00:00:00.000- Start heating GaAs wafer-Layer duration= 6 m	
+	Layer duration 00:13:00.000
🖻 - 🛄 03-00: 12:00.000- go to degas T° under As flux-Layer duration = 13 m 🛺 🛞	
E-44 Manipulator	User information go to degas T <sup>o</sup> under As flux
E⊣- As_P1_VAC500	Background color
Lat Valve_AVP6504.RampOP = 76 (linear while layer time)	Select events to add to this layer

These conditions will be then kept for 5 min in order to degas the wafer. In this example 680°C is the set-point value for the manipulator thermocouple, the corresponding real temperature being roughly 615°C. We assume in this example that deoxidation occurred at about 640°C, that is a real temperature of about 585°C. The As valve position, 76%, corrrespond to the targeted As flux for the following growth initial process.

- Create a fourth layer with no event at all, just a duration of 5 min (00:05:00:000). That means all conditions of previous layer will be kept on.

Main recipe: Noname	Pr	roperties	Script		
O1-00:00:00.000- Start heading GaAs water-Layer duration = 6 m     O2-00:06:00.000- increase T° under As flux at 25°C/min-Layer duration = 6 m     O3-00:12:00.000- go to degas T° under As flux-Layer duration = 13 m		Layer du	ration 00:05:00.000		
04-00:25:00.000- wafer degas at 615°C real T°- Layer duration= 5 m	ι	User inform	nation wafer degas at 615°C real T°		

Then the manipulator temperature set-point will be brought down to the value intended for growth, typically about the temperature at which has been seen deoxidation. In this example 640°C, that is a real temperature of about 585-590°C.

- Create a fifth and last layer within which the manipulator temperature will be brought down from 680°C to 640°C in 4 min (00:04:00.000), so still at a ramping rate of 10°C/min.

Main recipe: Noname	Properties Script
++ 01-00:00:00.000- Start heating GaAs water- Layer duration = 6 m	Laver duration 00:04:00.000
= 03-00:12:00.000- go to degas T° under As flux- Layer duration = 13 m	
	User information go to growth T°
05-00:30:00.000- go to growth T°- Layer duration= 4 m	De deserved enter
E-4 Manipulator	Background color
121 Temperature.RampSP = 640 (linear while layer time)	Select events to add to this laver

Note that in this example the manipulator rotation speed is kept at 4 rpm. This is because most likely upon starting the GaAs buffer, one wants to have a look to the RHEED pattern to see if the growth conditions are right. But then the manipulator speed would be increased, typically up to 20 or 30 rpm.

- Save the recipe. The default recipe path can be changed to a specific path if needed. Indeed recipe can be saved any time.



- After saving a schematic of the intended sequence of layers is shown on the right side:



# 20.2. More information about recipe edition

- Layer information:

.....

The recipe tree recalls for each layer some general information:

- its position in the recipe,
- the time at which it will be executed after the recipe has been launched,
- the comments set by the user in the corresponding box left side,
- the duration of the layer.

Main recipe: GaAs deoxidation.rcp	14
⊕ 01-00:00:00.000- Start heating GaAs wafer- Layer duration= 6 m	
⊕ 02-00:06:00.000- increase T° under As flux at 25°C/min-Layer duration = 6	5 m
⊕ 03-00:12:00.000- go to degas T° under As flux-Layer duration= 13 m	
⊕ 0500:30:00.000 go to growth T°- Layer duration 4 m	

.

The layer stack displays the total number of layers. Layer number currently under process while running a recipe is also display in the recipe information box.

Start heating GaAs wafer
ease T° under As flux at 25°C/
go to degas T° under As flux
wafer degas at 615°C real T°
go to growth T°
Total= 00:34:00.000 - 5 layers

- Background color:

To make viewing easier it is possible to attribute some colors to any of the layers included in a recipe:

Properties Generated script Charts		
No condition	Sho	w map 🗹 Show lines 🔽 Substrate on top
Layer duration 00:00:25.000		SUBSTRATE STORE
Comment cap layer	Couleurs	
Background color Select color  F+ Expand all Ga2_ABI85_P11 Ga2_ABI85_P11 Ga2_ABI85_P11 Ga3_ABI85_P11 Ga3_ABI95_P Ga3_ABI85_P1 Ga3_ABI95_P Ga3_ABI85_P1 Ga3_ABI95_P Ga3_ABI85_P1 Ga3_ABI95_P Ga3_ABI95_P Ga3_ABI95_P Ga3_ABI95_P Ga3_ABI95_P Ga3_ABI95_P Ga3_ABI85_P1 Ga3_ABI95_P Ga3_ABI85_P1 Ga3_ABI95_P Ga3_ABI85_P Ga3_	Couleurs de base :	Teinte : 141 Rouge : 166 Satur. : 171 Vert : 202 Couleur Unie Lum. : 191 Bleu : 240 Ajouter aux couleurs personnalisées
Mode Linear (Ramp) 🔻 Laye	r ouration	N N

There is no propagation mode but one can easily make its own color code to separate between recipe layer sequences:





- More about ramping:

This is the Crystal XE software that manages all set-point modifications while ramping during recipe execution, not the dedicated controllers themselves. That is every x seconds, depending on the resolution chosen, a new set-point is sent to the corresponding controller. This solution has been chosen to be consistant with the offset management, see dedicated section.

Crystal XE terminology:

Whenever ramping a temperature set-point, modify the tag RampSP:



Whenever ramping the valve set-point (% opening) of a valved cell, modify the tag RampOP:



- Insert, copy/paste layers:

To insert a layer (as well loop or sub-recipe), select the line above which you want the new layer to be positioned and right click to do the action.

To copy/paste:

Right click a layer to copy its content. Then select the layer below which you want this layer to be copied.

For example select layer #03 and copy it. Then select layer #04 and paste it. The copy of layer #03 will then be inserted between layer #04 and previous layer #05, which becomes now layer #06.

To copy a layer and insert it in first position, insert first a fake layer (New\Layer) in first position, then paste the copied layer below it, and last remove the fake layer.

#### - Sub-recipe:

Any created recipe can be inserted as a whole in another recipe, to make easier viewing and minimize mistakes while editing/copying an existing recipe. In this example the recipe created will be included as a sub-recipe placed in fist position in the final recipe we intend to edit.

Click as follows to add/insert a sub-recipe:

	Insert		
0	Add		Layer
X	Remove	Q	Loop
	Remove all	00	Pause
Ph.	Сору	<b>1</b>	Sub Recipe
	Paste		~
	BackGround color	•	
20	Start recipe here		

Click on the sub-recipe to see its detailed sequence.

Main recipe: Noname	
Sub recipe GaAs deoxidation.rcp Duration = 34 m	+• 🐹

A sub-recipe can be inserted in any position, first line, in-between layers, last line. It can also be inserted if needed into a loop. See dedicated section for loop usage in recipe.

- Ramp duration smaller than layer duration:

It is possible to make a ramp duration to be shorter than the duration intended for the layer within which it is incorporated. To do that unclick the 'Layer duration' box, a new box 'Duration' will appear. Set then the intended duration for the parameter ramp.



In above example the total duration of layer #03 has been modified to be 18 min. But the manipulator new set-point, 680°C, will still be reached in 13 min. That means for the next 5 min of this layer, the manipulator temperature will be kept at the same value, 680°C.

If the same has been done for the valve position, ramp up to 76% in 13 min, the execution of layer #03 of the second case will strictly be equivalent to the execution of layers #03 and #04 of the initial case. This feature permits to simplify editor viewing. Just make sure of what has been done since there is no warning that a ramp duration is smaller that the layer it is incorporated in.

- Recipe start at a specified layer number:

It can be interesting to start a recipe not at the very first line, but at a user-defined line number.

For example recipe execution has been aborted for some reason, and after some checks one wants to restart at the position it has been stopped, all parameters still being set according to the last layer executed.

By default the start flag is positionned at the first line, so the recipe starts from first line:

(	8	Nain recipe: GaAs deoxidation.rcp	Properties Scri	ipt		
È		01-00:00:00.000- Start heating GaAs wafer- Layer duration = 6 m			Chambre Chambres	-
E		02-00:06:00.000- increase T° under As flux at 25°C/min- Layer duration = 6 m	General		Show map V Show lines	
E		03-00:12:00.000- go to degas T° under As flux-Layer duration= 13 m	Title	GaAs deoxidation	[	00:00:00.000
		04-00:25:00.000- wafer degas at 615°C real T°- Layer duration = 5 m	Turne	2" wafer		
E		05-00:30:00.000- go to growth T°- Layer duration = 4 m	Type	5 Waler		
			Author	Riber	Start heating GaAs wafer	
			Company	Riber		
			Comments			

- Select the layer at which you want the recipe to start and right-click to select the 'Start recipe here' option:





In the example below, the recipe will start now from layer #03, layers #01 and #02 being ignored:
Main recipe: GaAs deoxidation.rcp	Properties Script	
01-00:00:00.000-Start heating GaAe wafer-layer duration = 6 m 20:00:60:000-Increase T <sup>2</sup> under As flux at 25°C/min-Layer duration = 6 m Comparison of the start of the star	Layer duration 00:13:00.000 User information go to degas T° under As flux ✓ Background color Select color Select color Select events to add to this layer □ Select events to add to	✓ Show map     ✓ Show lines       Start heating GaAs wafer       rease TP under As flux at 25%/m       00:12:00.000

- Use of non-linear ramps:

In case some layers differ only by set-point variations, no shutter commands, it is even possible to compress further the number of layers by using the non-linear ramp option possibilities.

Indeed this specific feature can also be used if a very particular profile is expected, such as a nonlinear temperature variation in case of graded composition or doping concentration within one layer.

Going back to the initial recipe detailed above, layers #2, 3, 4 and 5 only differ by their manipulator temperature set-point and their As cell valve position.

In details, the manipulator temperature set-point varies as follow: go from 400°C to 550°C in 6 min => ramping rate 25°C/min go from 550°C to 680°C in 13 min => ramping rate 10°C/min keep at 680°C for 5 min => plateau go from 680°C to 640°C in 4 min => ramping rate 10°C/min

It is possible to create a specific non-linear profile nearly fitting these variations: One just have to define some reference points for the X and Y-axis, scaled from 0 to 1 both of them. X-axis: 0 corresponds to time '0', 1 corresponds to time '28 min' Y-axis: 0 corresponds to temperature '400°C', 1 corresponds to temperature '640°C'. It is easy to calculate that the following data point series will nearly describe the expected profile: (0, 0) (0.214, 0.625) (0.679, 1.167) (0.857, 1.167) (1, 1)

- To create this profile, open the option menu displayed in the main window upper right corner:



- Open the profile editor by clicking on 'General\New profile':

RIDER Options														
n General	٢	Startup	8	Chambers		Email		SMS		Cloud/ Mobile	t.	Servers	Δ	Advanced
Sounder —						n d	Ramps —							
Default securi	ty soun	ıd			<b>X &gt;</b>		📄 New	custom pr	ofile					
												P Add		
Show icon	on sys	tem tray wh	en mir	nimized								1 Up		
Recorder —												🖶 Down		
Number o	f lines l	by file 6500	D	8								🗙 Remov		
Number of rec	ords in	cache <sup>30</sup>		8			tart ramp	s on Me	asureo	l value 🔻				

- Enter the data point series:

XE Profile editor -	
File	
1 🐸 📕 🗑 📲	
Chart Data	
2.0	

- Where is my recipe window?

Look at the left bottom of the screen!

Priority	level: 0	✓ Start / Stop system re				
All events	Criticals and	d warnings	Communication			
11/06/20	15 08:42:43	: (800) C2	1DZ: Sb_P12_VCor3			
XII Main r		× 22	DZ: As_P1_VAC50 DZ: Sb_P12_VCor3			
		6 6				

### 20.3. Loop edition

A series of layer will be edited corresponding to the GaAs buffer growth. For demonstration purpose, this buffer will include a super-lattice sequence consisting of 25 pairs of GaAs and AlGaAs thin layers, typically used to minimize dislocation propagation as well reduce the buffer growth time. We will use the loop function to edit this part of the buffer growth.

- Insert as a sub-recipe the *deoxidation GaAs* recipe created in part 1.1.
- Edit a first layer corresponding of the growth of a GaAs buffer for 10 min:

[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all	Properties Generated script Charts
Hain (GaAs deoxidation1.rcp) Duration = 3 m 15 s	No condition
Al_ABN60DF_P6	Layer duration 00:02:15.000
白	
Shutter.Control = OPEN	Comment AlGaAs:Si donor

Note that it is only necessary to edit the Ga cell shutter position to effectively grow GaAs, since both the As and the main shutters are already opened from the sub-recipe executed right before this layer.

- Select the line just edited and create the loop corresponding the 25 pairs of GaAs and GaAlAs layers:

[+] Expand all [-] Collapse all		Properties	Genera	ated script	Charts
01:00:00:00.000- AlGaAs spacer-Layer duration= 35 s		No condition	n	-	•
		Layer dur	ation	00:02:15.0	00
日 2:00:00:35.000- AlGaAs:Si donor-Layer duration = 2 m 15 s					
		Comn	ment	AlGaAs:Si d	lonor
03:00:02:50.0		laver		. <u>'-</u> r	
	1			Collapse a	all
Maya dayan		Daura	-	500 P1	
Remove [ Shutter.Control = OPEN ]				50_P2	
Copy	Ľ	Sub Recipe		135D_P	
Paste		Ē.		hutter	
BackGround color	•		12 Be AB	Control	
Start recipe here		Ē 📲	C_C_c	cell_P5	
			AL_ABI	N60DF_P6	
Grid View			Ba	ase	





The total duration of the loop is displayed at the 'Do' level :

O 1-00.34.00.000- Duriel growth toning ayer du
 O 25- 25x GaAs/AlGaAs- Duration 25 m
 O 1-00:44:00.000- - Layer duration 30 s

- Edit a last layer to finish buffer growth



Since the very last layer just before this layer corresponds to an AlGaAs layer, just close the Al shutter to grow again GaAs.

Layer numbering takes into account all layers included into the loop, so this new layer will be positioned number #52.

- Save the file, here *HEMT growth*:

Main recipe: HEMT growth.rcp	
- Sub recipe GaAs deoxidation.rcp Duration= 34 m	
⊕ 01-00:34:00.000- buffer growth 10min- Layer duration= 10 m	
🗄 🖵 Do 25- 25x GaAs/AlGaAs- Duration = 25 m	
E − 52-01:09:00.000- finish buffer growth 15min-Layer duration = 15 m	+
	100 C 100 C 100 C

## 20.4. In-depth information about loop usage

- Nested loops:

There is no limitation to the number of loops that can be inserted into a recipe or sub-recipe.

The following example shows various possibilities, just for demonstration purposes:



Basically the recipe contains two main lines, first a sub-recipe, then a 10 iteration loop.

Then wihtin this loop for each iteration execution, there are successively one simple layer, then a first nested 5 iteration loop, then another 5 iteration loop, and last one sub-recipe.

Deeper in the first 5 iteration loop consists of one sub-recipe followed by a single layer. The second 5 iteration loop consists of two simple layers.

Of course each sub-recipe used for this recipe could contain itself loops and nested loops.

Note that the total number of layers calculated and displayed at the bottom of the layer schematic does not take into account sub-recipes, only sinple layers.

- 'Slow' ramp:

In standard effusion cells, it may be necessary to take into account material depletion into the crucible to keep constant the growth rate of the corresponding element, especially if the recipe to be executed lasts for 10 hours or more. That is in fact increase the set-point temperature of the cell, to keep constant the outcoming flux, thus the growth rate.

After some calibration one can estimate by how much the temperature should be increased over the total duration of the recipe.

Then to smoothly increase over time the temperature, it is possible to modify the corresponding setpoint by inserting the entire recipe to be executed within a loop consisting of one single iteration, and at the loop level, define the needed event:



When this recipe starts, the temperature will be linearly increased to reach respectively 940.6°C for the base, and 990.6°C for the tip after 15 h. The ramping rate will be calculated based on starting value. Since there is no temperature set in this recipe, the linear ramp will start from the actual set-point value. For example, the temperatures were last set to 940°C and 990°C before starting the recipe.

This means that the ramping rate will be in this case 0.04°C/min.

If a new recipe, one can directly create first the loop, then include all needed layers within this loop. If the recipe already exists, just add itt as a sub-recipe in the loop.

This specific fetaure could be used as well to linealy modify a temperature over a loop execution contained inside a recipe, thus vary overthrough it the composition or the doping level.

- Shutter initialization at loop start:

There is a special case for which, if not properly edited, the execution of a loop inside a recipe will not be as expected.

Let's take the following case as an example:

First scenario:



We grow AlGaAs just before loop start. For the first cycle, the first layer will be GaAs, since we close the Al shutter. The second layer of this first cycle will be AlAs. But for the second cycle, and all folowing, there is no indication for Ga shutter status in the first layer, so this Ga shutter would be kept closed, meaning that the loop is not executed as most likely expected.

Therefore, Ga shutter status should be specified, open, for the frst layer as shown in second scenario:



- Case study, super-lattice InAs/GaSb:

Photodetector structure requests the use of many iterations of thin InAs and GaSb layers, thus, many shutter and valve position changes over time to be included in the corresponding loop.

Indeed some special attention has to brought to the interface quality, and the use of a quite sophisticated series of layers to be integrated in the loop for each iteration.

Some precaution have to be taken as well to minimize stress applied to the mechanical parts while moving the valves.

But the aim of this section is to pin-point some recommandation about valve controller usage while editing the loop. So only the valve tags will be included.

The loop could be edited as follows regarding valve parameter settings, when using RIBER valve controllers model AVP6504:

- Edit the following layer immediately above the loop:

÷	Shutter Valve_AVP6504	
	RampOP	N
	RampSlopeOF	<b>y</b>
	ValveClb	
	121 RegMode	
	P	
	121 D	
lue		
000		

Main recipe: SL InAs GaSb.rcp	
└──── 01-00:00:00.000- set valve speed- Layer duration = 1 s	
Ė-🥵 As_P1_VAC500	
Valve_AVP6504.RampSlopeOP = 3000	
Ė-4 Sb_P12_VCor300	
Valve_AVP6504.RampSlopeOP = 3000	

In this layer, we set the speed at which the valve will be moved during execution of the loop next. Set 3000, that is the valves will move at a speed of 3000% per min (so valves would move from 0 to 100% in 2 s for example).

It corresponds to the 'Slope' parameter that is shown on the 'Valve' page of the cell inspector:



The valve positions will be moved as steps in the loop, not linearly over time, to quickly establish/cut GV fluxes. But still one can optimized the speed at which the valves will move, taking into account both the flux requirements and the necessity to minimize mechanical stress. 3000 is a good starting point, that can be optimized later depending on grown structure ex-situ quality checks, such as PL or HRXRD measurements.

- Then the loop next to this initialization layer would look as follow regarding valve tags:



Note that the valve is not fully closed (0%) when growing the layer with the other GV element. One can just use a 'closed' position cutting enough the flux, not to spoil interface quality. Values shown here can be used as starting values prior to optimization.

## 20.5. Recipe edition: finalization

So far we have remove oxide from the GaAs wafer and grow the GaAs buffer by this recipe. Next we will edit another sub-recipe consisting in all active layers for the HEMT structure, and a last one to end the growth process.

These sub-recipes will be edited in a similar way to the deoxidation GaAs sub-recipe, so only the final edition is shown for both of them:

- Sub-recipe HEMT active layers:



- Sub-recipe end GaAs growth:

In order this sub-recipe to be used for any growth for which we keep under As flux meanwhile decrease manipulator/grown wafer temperature, all shutters potentially opened previously for active layers are forced to the closed positon in this sub-recipe.

In our simple case indeed only Ga cell position #11 and Si cell shutters needed to be closed.

In the first layer we keep under As flux, so both the As cell shutter and the main shutter are kept opened, and we linearly decrease the manipulator temperature. Meanwhile we also linearly decreased the As valve position since less and less As is needed to protect the surface. And also it reduces the As pressure in the growth chamber, we want as little As as possible before to open the transfer valve to the buffer chamber to take out the platen.

In the second and last layer we prepare for transfer out. Both As and main shutters are closed. The As valve is closed. The manipulator rotation is stopped.



- Now the complete recipe can be edited:



- Rename sub-recipes to display titles instead of duration in the layer block view:

Layer duration 00:34:00.000 User information Deoxidation Background color Select color Deoxidation.rcp Sub recipe: GaAs deoxidation.rcp 00-00:00:00.000- Start heating GaAs wafer - Layer duration = 6 m 00-00:00:00:00.000- increase T° under As flux at 25°C/min - Layer duration = 00-00:00:00:00.000- go to degas T° under As flux - Layer duration = 00-00:00:00:00.000- wafer degas at 615°C real T°- Layer duration = 00-00:00:00:00.000- go to growth T°- Layer duration = 4 m	Deoxidation
	buffer growth 10min
	finish buffer growth 15min
	HEMT
	End growth

- Note that is it alos possible to display the layer stack from bottom by uncliking the 'Substrate on top' tick box:

Show map Show line	Substrate on top
Total= 01:32:15.000 - 62 la	yen
End growth	
HEMT	
finish buffer growth 15m	in
buffer growth 10min	
Deoxidation	
SUBSTRATE	00:00:00.000

# 20.6. In depth information about recipe edition

- Pause function:

During its execution the recipe can be paused by clicking on the 'Pause' button:



The recipe will then be frozen it its actual status, all parameters being kept at their current set-point values. In the particular case where a recipe is paused while ramping a set-point, clicking the 'Resume' button will restart the ramp at the exact point it was left.

But it is also possible to directly integrate a pause in the recipe. The recipe execution will then be frozen until end-user manually clicks the 'Resume' button to continue recipe execution:

Main [HEN Sub recipe   	1T growth.rcp] Durat GaAs deoxidation.rcp- D 0.000- buffer growth 10	ion= <b>1 h 32 m 15 s</b> eoxidation- Duration= 34 m min- Layer duration= 10 m	
申-C Do 25- 25x	🔚 Insert		Dever
S/:01:09:0	ᠿ <u>A</u> dd		
Sub recipe	Add after the loop	p	
	☆ <u>M</u> ove Up ♣ M <u>o</u> ve down <u>★ R</u> emove [ Do 25- <u>C</u> opy Paste	25x GaAs/AlGaAs- Duration= 25 m ]	Sub Recipe
	<u>B</u> ackGround colo Start recipe here <u>G</u> rid view	r	►
[+] Expand all         [-] Colapse all           3< Main [HEMT growth.rc           3< Sub recipe GaAs deoxida           6:0:0:34:00.000-buffer           0:0:0:34:00.000-buffer           0:10:0:44:40.000-buffer           0:10:0:44:40.000-buffer           0:0:2:0:2:40:0.000-buffer	p) Duration= 1 h 32 m 15 s ion.rcp-Deoxidation-Duration= 34 m growth 10mi-Layer duration= 10 m Duration= 25 m C 2 2 2 (8) ayer duration= 30 s wer duration= 30 s	Properties Generated script Charts No condition Iteration number 25 User information 25x GaAs/A/GaAs	Show map Show lines Substrate on top
57:01:09:00.000-finish 년 영화 Sub recipe HEMT active la 양 Sub recipe end GaAs grou	uffer growth 15min-Layer duration= 15 yers.rcp-HEMT-Duration= 3 m 15 s tth.rcp-End growth-Duration= 5 m	Background color Select color Same color in the loop  I Expand al  Collapse al  B- Collapse color	Deoxidation
		Value or formula	buffer growth 10min

A blue horizontal arrow signals that a special event, here the pause function, is intended during this recipe execution

Then during recipe execution, a red flashing message will inform that recipe execution has been frozen at the pause level.

Click on the 'Resume' button to resume the recipe execution.

📄 New recipe 🦻 Open/Edit	
Detach Paused	
Recipe name	
HEMT growth.rcp	<b>/</b> 🕀 📃 🗙
Run Stop Resume Skip layer	Layer count: 62
Current layer	
2019/07/19 11:08:33,548 > Paused	
Number : 1 Remaining time: Layer time: 00:05:59	Pause time: 00:00:14
Overall status	
Start time: 19/07/2019 11:08:25 Elapsed time : 00:00:22 Total pause time: 00:00	0:14
Recipe remaining time: 01:32	2:06
Layer   Date / Time   Description	

Paused time is displayed as shown above.

- How to mix script and recipe?

Let's suppose we want to execute the *HEMT growth* recipe as defined previously, but with a special function inserted in-between two layers, a special function that can only be described by the use of a script.

As an example, we want to remove oxide and get ready for growth, but before to grow we want to make sure the temperature is correct by adjusting the manipulator set-point according to the pyrometer reading.

The check will consist in averaging pyrometer reading over 10 measurements taken at 1s interval, and compare the average value to the target value. If within defined temperatre range, we proceed with buffer growth. If not, we modify the manipulator set-point according to the difference found, and repeat the check until it is OK.

There is no possibility to directly integrate script lines into a recipe tree. But as an alternative, it is possible to edit a new script that will contain the recipe transformed into its equivalent in script lines, split it into two parts by inserting the series of script lines corresponding to the special function at the proper position.

And doing so run this specific script to execute what we originally plan to do, remove oxide, wait for the proper temperature to be obtained, then start to grow buffer and following steps.



recipe Part 2 In details:

Open the HEMT growth recipe and click on 'Script' to get its equivalent in script lines:



Properties	Generated script Charts
This script is	s automatically generated and can not be modified Check Save script as Copy to clipboard
1 🚍	Procedure SubRecipe_end_GaAs_growth_rcp;
2	Var
3	Rtarget : Real;
4 🚍	Begin
5	<pre>Si_ABN135D_P3.Shutter.Control:=0;</pre>
6	<pre>Be_ABN135D_P4.Shutter.Control:=0;</pre>
7	C_C_cell_P5.Shutter.Control:=0;
8	Al_ABN60DF_P6.Shutter.Control:=0;
9	Ga1_ABN60DF_P8.Shutter.Control:=0;
10	C_CBr4_LTI_P9.Shutter.Control:=0;
11	<pre>In1_ABI85_P10.Shutter.Control:=0;</pre>
12	Ga2_ABI85_P11.Shutter.Control:=0;
13	Sb_VCor300_P12.Shutter.Control:=0;
14	As_VAC500_P1.Valve_AVP6504.RampTypeOP:=1;
15	RTarget:=20;

Copy all script lines and paste them into a newly created script:

New recipe	🚰 Open/Edit	
Detach		
-Recipe name	e	

Main	
1	Procedure SubRecipe_end_GaAs_growth_rcp;
2	Var
3	Rtarget : Real;
4	Begin
5	Si_P3_ABN135D.Shutter.Control:=0;
6	Be_P4_ABN135D.Shutter.Control:=0;
5	C_P5_C_cell.Shutter.Control:=0;
8	Al_P6_ABN60DF.Shutter.Control:=0;
9	Ga1_P8_ABN60DF.Shutter.Control:=0;
10	C_P9_CBr4_LTI.Shutter.Control:=0;
11	In1_P10_ABI85.Shutter.Control:=0;
12	Ga2_P11_ABI85.Shutter.Control:=0;
13	Sb_P12_VCor300.Shutter.Control:=0;
14	RTarget:=20;
15	As_P1_VAC500.Valve_AVP6504.RampTypeOP:=1;
16	As_P1_VAC500.Valve_AVP6504.RampResOP:=1;
17	As_P1_VAC500.Valve_AVP6504.RampSlopeOP:= abs(RTarget-As_P1_VAC500.Valve_AVP6504.OP)*60/180;

Pay attention to how is organized the script, there are in this example first a series of 3 'Procedure' that describe the 3 sub-recipes that will be included into the recipe. For example the middle one is described lines 38-48:



And then the series of lines corresponding to the execution of the recipe as a whole, starting line 97,



and ending line 116.

To proceed as needed, insert the necessary script lines at the proper position, in this case in-between lines 99 and 100.



#### - Configurable recipes:

Crystal XE allows the user to define a series of properties, named in Crystal XE 'global variables', that can be used while editing a recipe or a script.

There are several ways to use this feature, some dedicated to specific cases such as evaporation gun control during recipe execution, and they are described elsewhere.

But it can also be used as described below:

As an example, in the superlattice InAs/GaSb recipe described above, it is possible to refer to global variables instead of specific values for the percentage opening of both the As and the Sb valves.

Indeed in this simple case, it does not change much to modify the % values directly in the recipe editor (based on ex-situ calibrations after growth), or modify two or four global variable values.

But if the recipe is more complicated, containing hundreds of layers, with usage of a series of different percentage openings for both valves (depending on the target composition in each corresponding layer), it can be quite tricky to make sure all changes have been correctly made in all the layers, since these changes have to be looked for, and made one by one.

Thus in this second case it is much simpler to define a series of global variables, make oneself a table inserted in the 'User view' of the 'Main' page that will contain those global variable values, and modify from this page the values whenever necessary. That is only one time for each of them, instead of hundreds of time maybe if done directly by editing the recipe. So in this case no need to check on the recipe itself: upon execution, it will automatically read all values from this table, and apply them to the corresponding parameters each time they are called in.

Indeed as an alternative method, it is also possible to make oneself a spreadsheet from which those values can be more easily modify, and import the spreedhsheet into the recipe to take into account the new set of values.

In details:

Open the configuration window to create the series of global variables:



Open the 'Global variables' window, and click on 'Add Var' button:



Create the first variable, for example here for the As valve:



Name field reddish if it contains forbidden characters, or spaces No need yet to input a value

Real type in this case since this is a valve opening percentage

Create all necessary global variables:



More than necessary here for demonstration purpose

Press 'OK' to confirm the selection, and exit the 'Configuration' menu (it is automatically saved).

Go to the 'User View' page of the 'Main' display set and create a table containing these global variables.

Starting from scratch:

Edit the view form, and drag and place a new 'Combo box':

		-	
Move to screen	Basic Usual On/Off Windows O	ithers	
Copy to clipboard Save to image file Print	LABEL Label		Group
Detach	Group box		
Edit the form	Image		
$\backslash$	Animated image		

Change title to your liking:

🖇 Label		Valve set value	s]
Fext to display			
Valve set values	A Font		

Unselect the Combo box, and drag and place a first 'Indicator':



Set the proper global variable as follows:

Basic Advanced	E Tag E S Degas_chamber E S C21DZ	
Object type: TObjIndicator		
<ul> <li>✓ Title / Caption</li> <li>Text to display</li> <li>Title</li> <li>A Font</li> <li>Alignment</li> <li>Top</li> <li>✓ Transparent background</li> </ul>	App forms Batch Grant As_valve_type_A_lawer Main As_valve_type_B_layer Main As_valve_type_C_layer Main Sb_valve_type_A_layer	1
Value to display Property A Font	الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الله	

Add title, modify font, add unit:

Object type: TObjIndicator		
Text to display		
As valve : layer A type 🔪 🛛 🗛 Font		1265
Alianment	Alignment	Valve set values
Top <ul> <li>Transparent background</li> </ul>	Center 👻	As valve : layer A type
	Transparent background	0.00 %
	Background color	
Property	Fixed width 127 🖨	
App.Var.As_valve_type_A_lay	∀ Unit	
Allow user entry	Unit to display	
Float format Test field	2	
0.00 🔻 37.45		

Add blanks after unit to make it to appear more centered.

Make sure to tick the 'Allow user entry' box to be able to modify the values from this table:

Property	
App.Var.Sb_valv	e_type_A_lay 🔄 🗛 Font
Allow user en	try
Float format	Test field
0.00	▼ 37.45

Complete with all necessary global variables, and adjust window size, background color to your liking:



Copy/paste the first 'Indicator' to create the other ones.

Exit and save the new 'User View'.

Modify then the 'SL InAs GaSb' recipe shown as an example in above section:





Then before recipe execution, fill in according to last calibration runs the global variable field in the 'User view':



- Offset editor:

Due to material depletion into the crucible, with standard effusion cells it will be necessary to modify/increase the cell temperature to keep the same outcoming flux.

This can be done directly from the recipe editor by opening the offset sub-menu and entering values, or downloading an existin offset file.

File Edit View		
🗋 💕 🛃 H	L 🛈 († 🖓 🔤	i‡ ia∓
Main recipe:	HEMT recipe with Former	ets
F- 01:00:00:00	.000-init cell a concorrs	heratures-Lave
	And and de Kan and Da	perdures cuye
	A desideres an Pe	
	Dase	
Ga2_ABI85_P11	Dase Insert	
Ga2_ABI85_P11	pase Insert Base	

This can also be done directly from the 'Recipe' page:

New recipe	Open/Edit	 	
Detach	A		
Recipe nam	growth.rcp		÷

- Growth rate editor:

A dedicated function permits to convert durations into thicknesses, and reversely thicknesses into durations, to make sure the layers will be as originally planned.

In this version, Crystal XE calculates duration or thickness based on following parameters:

- a valid growth rate has been defined,
- the cell shutter is open.

Note that this features is meant to help in simple cases. For complicated structures that would imply growth rate changes, it is possible to import an accordingly defined spread sheet. Also:

The main shutter status - open, closed or not specified - is not taken into account, the calculation is done independently.

If the temperature is changed while the shutter is open, the calculation will still be done according to the set growth rate.

To define growth rate and thickness units, go to the 'General' page of the 'Options' window.

	ons	Thickness pm
General 🕐 Startup 👩 Growth rate µm/h	eneral 🕛 Startup (	Growth rate µm/h 💌

Indeed this choice can be modifed anytime. Upon opening the recipe window, the values will be modified accordingly.

Open the recipe and open the 'Growth rate editor' window to set the growth rates to be taken into accont in the calculations:



Growth rate e	ditor	×				
Equipment	GrowthRate (µm/h)					
As_VAC500_P1	0					
P_KPC250_P2	0					
Si_ABN135D_P3	0					
Be_ABN135D_P4	0					
C_C_cell_P5	0					
AI_ABN60DF_P6	0.428					
Ga1_ABN60DF_P8	1					
In1_ABI85_P10	0					
Ga2_ABI85_P11	0		s:   🎒 Da	ata		
Sb_VCor300_P12	0		Nom		^	
	Ok Cancel		🗿 gr I	hemt		

Either manually enter the values or download a previously saved file.

Upon entering nonzero values, the column 'Thickness' of the table view and the 'thickness' box of the layer will be filled in accordingly. If no nonzero growth rate can be found for one layer, the column/box will remain empty.

De	tach						
						1	2
						Ga2_ABI85_P11	AL_ABN60DF_P6
						Shutter	Shutter
#	Layer	Description	Duration	Thickness	Material	Control	Control
	Sub recipe GaAs deoxidation.rcp	Deoxidation	34 m				
06	00:34:00.000	buffer growth 10min	10 m	166.66666666667	Ga	OPEN	
	DO 25	25x GaAs/AlGaAs					
01	00:44:00.000		30 s	8.3333333333333333333333333333333333333	Ga		CLOSE
02	00:44:30.000		30 s	11.9	GaAl		OPEN
	END LOOP		-				

Note that in case a growth rate is changed, this is the thickness value that will be changed, the duration value remains unchanged.

Indeed selecting a nonzero value from the Table view open the corresponding tag that can then be directly modified:

					Properties Script Charts				_
			Ga2_ABI85_P11 Shutter	1	Layer duration 00:10:00.000				Ga2_A
Duration	Thickness	Material	Control		Thickness 180 nm	Duratio	n Thickness	Material	Co
34 m				-1		34 m			
(10 m)	166.666666666667	Ga	OPEN	2	Comment buffer growth 10min	10 m 48	s 180	Ga	0
	~					-			
30 s	8.333333333333333333	Ga			Carlos Calentarias 🗖	30 s	8.33333333333333333333	Ga	
30 s	11.9	GaAl			✓ Background color	30 s	11.9	GaAl	
-					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				

## 20.7. Recipe edition: additional viewings

For a better understanding, an init line setting growth temperatures has been inserted as first layer in the 'HEMT growth' recipe, renamed 'HEMT recipe with temperatures'. It will permit to detail the two functions presented in this section.

Main recipe: HEMT growth with temperatures.rcp
📮 🗔 01:00:00:00.000- init epi temperatures- Laver durati 🖽 🕱 🦷
□
Cracker_Z2.RampSP 600 (step)
Reservoir_Z1.RampSP = 315 (step)
🔄 – 🥵 Ga2_ABI85_P11
Insert.RampSP = 900 (step)
Base.RampSP 1000 (step)
- Al_ABN60DF_P6
Tip.RampSP = 1015 (step)
Base.RampSP 1115 (step)
Temperature.RampSR = 1175 (step)
E
Temperature.RampSP = 250 (step)
Sub recipe GaAs deoxidation.rcp-Deoxidation-Duration= 34 n

- Graph display:

Click on the 'Charts' page



Graph display and related features are identical to the 'Charts' page of the corresponding chamber in the configuration. It is not possiblle to have the measured values to be plotted on their graphs.



- Table view:

The recipe is also represented as a table from where one can have an overview of all parameters with a defined setting in one of the layers, except for subrecipes that are not taken into account. This table is interactive, you can modify all parameters:

- Durations.
- Shutter positions.
- Temperature and valve set-points.

De	tach				
#	laver	Description	Duration	Thickness	Material
01	00:00:00.000	init epi temperatures	1s	THICKICSS	Thereentar
	Sub recipe GaAs deoxidation.rcp	Deoxidation	34 m		
07	00:34:01.000	buffer growth 10min	10 m		Ga
	DO 25	25x GaAs/AlGaAs			
01	00:44:01.000		30 s		Ga
02	00:44:31.000		30 s		GaAl
	END LOOP				
58	01:09:01.000	finish buffer growth 15min	15 m		Ga
	Sub recipe HEMT active layers.rcp	HEMT	3 m 15 s		
	Sub recipe end GaAs growth.rcp	End growth	5 m		

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
	Ga2_ABI85_P11			AL_ABN60DF_P6		As_VAC	500_P1	Si_ABN135D_P3	Manipulator
Shutter	Insert	Base	Shutter	Tip	Base	Cracker_Z2	Reservoir_Z1	Temperature	Temperature
Control	RampSP	RampSP	Control	RampSP	RampSP	RampSP	RampSP	RampSP	RampSP
	900 (step)	1000 (step)		1015 (step)	1115 (step)	600 (step)	315 (step)	1175 (step)	250 (step)
OPEN		gradina ana ana ana ana ana ana ana ana ana							proverene en en este
Sector of the sector of the	8	2	5			( ) (		5	8
			CLOSE		0				0
			OPEN		Ĩ.			i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	
			1						
			CLOSE					and the second second	

Clicking on one parameter directly opens the tree view to allow modification. Select the 'Properties' page and click on the parameter to be modified:

Modify	e P
tode Step ▼ alue 500 Modify	P •
Iode Step Alue Modify	
tode Step ▼ alue 500 Modify	
tode Step ▼ alue 500 Modify	
Iode Step v ialue 500 Modify	- <u>t.</u>
Iode Step  Value 500 Modify	Ē.
1ode Step falue 500 Modify	ţ.
Nodify	
Step  Value Modify	ŧ.
alue 500 Modify	ŧ.
500 Modify	ŧ.
Modify	
Modify	
Modify	
Modify	
	1
	As_VAC5
	Cracker_Z2
on Thickness Material	RampSP

Note that is is also possible to add a parameter by simply clicking on an empty box of this table.

## 8.5 Other features

- How to follow recipe execution progress?



In addition to the information contained in the integrated log file, it is possible to exactly follow the recipe execution by opening the 'Script debug tool' window:



The recipe line currently executed in highlighted in blue:



This feature can be very useful for example to exactly know which iteration of a loop is currently executed, by displaying the parameter of interest, in this case the iteration number.

Open the 'Display' menu to select which variables will be displayed:

KE Script debug tool	
File Display	
✓ <u>D</u> isplay active line Status bar	tation basic.Rotation SP:=4;
✓ <u>V</u> ariables	mperature.RampTypeSP:=1;
59 Manipulator.Te 60 Manipulator.Te 61 Lawar('Start )	<pre>imperature.RampSlopeSP:= abs(RTarget-Mani imperature.RampSP:=RTarget; impering Sals wafer' 360000);</pre>
Script debug tool	
File Display	Rtarget: REAL
59 Manipulat 60 Manipulat 61 Layer('St 62	2 i 0
Script debug tool	
File Display	
100 Ga2_ABI85_P11.SI 101 Layer("Buffer gr	autter.Control:=1

100	Ga2 ABI85 P11.Shutter.Control:=1			(a
101	Layer (buffer growth 10min', 6000	i: INT32	Add Var	Add Al
102	25x GaAs/AlGaAs	H Man Malua		
103	for i:=1 to 25 do	# var value		
10	Begin	1 1 6	)	
105	Al_ABN60DF_P6.Shutter.Control:			
106	Laver('', 30000);			

So the sixth iteration of the loop is currently being executed in this example.

- How to retrieve data from recorded files?

Unless unticked in the 'Recipe' page, a file containing all parameters defined in the record template in current use will be saved:



If the template 'Default' is selected, all parameters will be saved. Create your own template to fine-tune the selection.

After recipe completion, double-click on the recipe csv file to pop-up a window displaying all data:
Filter by date	20
2017-01-02_10-39-20_C21DZ.csv 2017-01-02_11-30-16_C21DZ.csv	
2017-01-02_11-31-57_C21DZ.csv	

Double click on any tag to display it as a graph view:



Similarly to the 'Charts' page, one can display several parameters on the same graph of the same type, zoom, activate the 'balloon' function to display values, save the data displayed in one graph as a new csv file.

## 21. License

CRYSTAL XE Copyright (C) 2016-2022 RIBER SA. All Rights Reserved

NOTICE TO USER:

THIS IS A CONTRACT BETWEEN YOU AND RIBER S.A.

BY INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE (AS DEFINED BELOW), YOU ACCEPT ALL THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT.

This RIBER End User Licence Agreement accompanies the CRYSTAL product and related explanatory materials ("Software"). The term "Software" shall also include any upgrades, modified versions or updates of the Software licensed to you by RIBER S.A.

Please read this Agreement carefully. At the end, you will be asked to accept this Agreement and continue to install or, if you do not wish to accept this Agreement, to decline this Agreement, in which case you will not be able to use the Software.

If you cannot understand this licence or do not think this licence applies to you then please contact the RIBER S.A. Customer Service Department.

This is a licence agreement and not an agreement for sale. RIBER S.A. continues to own the copy of the Software and the physical media contained in this package and any other copy that you are authorised to make pursuant to this Agreement.

Unless you have a different licence agreement signed by RIBER SA. your use of this software indicates your acceptance of this licence agreement and warranty.

## A. Use of the Software

One registered copy of CRYSTAL may either be used by a single person who uses the software personally on one or more computers, or installed on a single workstation used nonsimultaneously by multiple people, but not both.

Unregistered use of CRYSTAL is in violation of international copyright laws.

B. Copyright and Trademark Rights

The Software is the intellectual property of RIBER S.A. and is protected by French copyright law, international treaty provisions, and applicable laws of the country in which it is being used.

The structure, organisation and code of the Software are the valuable trade secrets and confidential information of RIBER.

You may use the trademarks only to identify printed output produced by the Software, in accordance with accepted trademark practice, including identification of trademark owner's name.

Such use of any trademark does not give you any rights of ownership in that trademark. Except as stated above, this Agreement does not grant you any intellectual property rights in the Software.

## C. Restrictions

The Software is licensed and distributed by RIBER S.A. for working with RIBER Molecular Beam Epitaxy (MBE) systems.

Because of its hardware dependency (extension cards, controllers, regulators, automates), the software is intended to run conforming with the hardware compatibility guide.

Please, contact RIBER S.A. Customer Service Department to get this compatibility guide.

## D. Disclaimer of Warranty

The Software is being delivered to you "AS IS" and RIBER makes no warranty as to its use of performance.

RIBER DOES NOT AND CANNOT WARRANT THE PERFORMANCE OR RESULTS YOU MAY OBTAIN BY USING THE SOFTWARE OR DOCUMENTATION. IN NO EVENT WILL RIBER BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT OR SPECIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST SAVINGS, EVEN IF A RIBER REPRESENTATIVE HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, OR FOR ANY CLAIM BY ANY THIRD PARTY.

In particular, there is no warranty for the virus scanning (CRYSTAL does not scan for viruses, use external programs to perform this function).

Some states or jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental, consequential or special damages, or the exclusion of implied warranties or limitations on how long an implied warranty may last, so the above limitations may not apply to you.

Good data processing procedure dictates that any program be thoroughly tested with non-critical data before relying on it.

The user must assume the entire risk of using the program. ANY LIABILITY OF THE SELLER WILL BE LIMITED EXCLUSIVELY TO PRODUCT REPLACEMENT.

E. Distribution

You are specifically prohibited from charging, or requesting donations, for any such copies, however made; and from distributing the software and/or documentation with other products (commercial or otherwise) without prior written permission.

CONTACT :

To contact us : RIBER 31, rue Casimir Périer BP 70083 92873 BEZONS CEDEX FRANCE

Mail: customerservice@riber.fr

Our web site : http://www.riber.com and http://www.crystalxe.com